Minimum Standards

For

General Residential Operations

June 2015
MINIMUM STANDARDS
For

GENERAL RESIDENTIAL OPERATIONS

TEXAS DEPARTMENT OF FAMILY AND PROTECTIVE SERVICES
LICENSING DIVISION
Subchapter A, Purpose and Scope ................................................................................. 1
Subchapter B, Definitions and Services ........................................................................ 3
  Division 1, Definitions .......................................................................................... 3
  Division 2, Services ............................................................................................ 9
Subchapter C, Organization and Administration.............................................................. 15
  Division 1, Permit Holder Responsibilities ............................................................ 15
  Division 2, Governing Body ................................................................................ 18
  Division 3, General Fiscal Requirements ............................................................... 20
  Division 4, Required Postings .............................................................................. 20
  Division 5, Policies and Procedures ...................................................................... 21
Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping .................................................................. 27
  Division 1, Reporting Serious Incidents and Other Occurrences ......................... 27
  Division 2, Operation Records ............................................................................ 34
  Division 3, Personnel Records ............................................................................. 35
  Division 4, Child Records ................................................................................... 37
  Division 5, Record Retention ................................................................................. 38
Subchapter E, Personnel ............................................................................................ 41
  Division 1, General Requirements ...................................................................... 41
  Division 2, Child-Care Administrator .................................................................. 43
  Division 3, Professional Level Service Providers ................................................ 45
  Division 4, Treatment Director ........................................................................... 51
  Division 5, Caregivers ......................................................................................... 53
  Division 6, Contract Staff and Volunteers ............................................................. 56
Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development .................................................. 59
  Division 1, Definitions ......................................................................................... 59
  Division 2, Orientation ......................................................................................... 59
  Division 3, Pre-Service Experience and Training ................................................ 60
  Division 4, General Pre-Service Training ............................................................. 63
  Division 5, Pre-Service Training Regarding Emergency Behavior Intervention .... 65
  Division 6, Annual Training ................................................................................ 67
  Division 7, First-Aid and CPR Certification ......................................................... 74
Subchapter G, Child/Caregiver Ratios ......................................................................... 77
Subchapter H, Child Rights .......................................................................................... 83
Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge ......................................... 91
  Division 1, Admission ......................................................................................... 91
  Division 2, Emergency Admission ....................................................................... 103
  Division 3, Educational Services ....................................................................... 105
  Division 4, Service Plans .................................................................................... 107
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subchapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Emergency Behavior Intervention</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Child Care</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 1, Dental Care</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 2, Medical Care</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 3, Communicable Diseases</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 4, Protective Devices</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 5, Supportive Devices</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 6, Tobacco Use</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 7, Nutrition and Hydration</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 8, Additional Requirements for Infant Care</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 9, Additional Requirements for Toddler Care</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 10, Additional Requirements for Pregnant Children</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Operations That Provide Care for Children and Adults</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 1, Scope</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 2, General Requirements</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Medication</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 1, Administration of Medication</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 2, Self-Administration of Medication</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 3, Medication Storage and Destruction</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 4, Medication Records</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 5, Medication and Label Errors</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 6, Side Effects and Adverse Reactions to Medication</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 7, Use of Psychotropic Medication</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Discipline and Punishment</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Emergency Behavior Intervention</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 1, Definitions</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 2, Types of Emergency Behavior Intervention That May Be Administered</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 3, Orders</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 4, Responsibilities During Administration of Any Type of Emergency Behavior Intervention</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 5, Additional Responsibilities During Administration of a Personal Restraint</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 6, Additional Responsibilities During Administration of Seclusion</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 7, Additional Responsibilities During Administration of a Mechanical Restraint</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 8, Successive Use and Combinations of Emergency Behavior Intervention</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 9, Time Restrictions for Emergency Behavior Intervention</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 10, General Caregiver Responsibilities, Including Documentation, After the Administration of Emergency Behavior Intervention</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Division 11, Triggered Reviews .................................................................................. 195
Division 12, Overall Operation Evaluation ................................................................. 197

Subchapter O, Safety and Emergency Practices .......................................................... 199
Division 1, Sanitation and Health Practices ................................................................. 199
Division 2, Natural Gas and Liquefied Petroleum ....................................................... 202
Division 3, Fire Safety Practices .................................................................................. 203
Division 4, Heating Devices ....................................................................................... 206
Division 5, Carbon Monoxide Safety Practices ......................................................... 207
Division 6, Emergency Evacuation and Relocation ..................................................... 208
Division 7, First-Aid Kits ......................................................................................... 211

Subchapter P, Physical Site ....................................................................................... 213
Division 1, Grounds and General Requirements ....................................................... 213
Division 2, Interior Space ........................................................................................ 216
Division 3, Toilet and Bath Facilities ....................................................................... 222
Division 4, Poisons .................................................................................................. 224
Division 5, Food Preparation, Storage, and Equipment .......................................... 224
Division 6, Play Equipment and Safety Requirements ............................................ 230
Division 7, Playground Use Zones ......................................................................... 232
Division 8, Protective Surfacing ............................................................................. 235
Division 9, Swimming Pools, Wading/Splashing Pools, and Hot Tubs ................... 236

Subchapter Q, Recreation Activities ......................................................................... 239
Division 1, General Requirements ......................................................................... 239
Division 2, Swimming Activities ............................................................................. 243
Division 3, Watercraft Activities ............................................................................ 246
Division 4, Wilderness Hiking and Camping Excursions ...................................... 247
Division 5, Trampoline Use ..................................................................................... 255
Division 6, Weapons, Firearms, Explosive Materials, and Projectiles ................. 256

Subchapter R, Transportation ................................................................................... 259
Division 1, General Requirements ......................................................................... 259
Division 2, Safety Restraints .................................................................................. 261
Division 3, Vehicle and Vehicle Maintenance ......................................................... 263
Division 4, Transportation Records ........................................................................ 264

Subchapter S, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Emergency Care
Services .................................................................................................................... 265
Division 1, Service Management ............................................................................ 265
Division 2, Admission Assessment .......................................................................... 268
Division 3, Respite Child-Care Services ................................................................ 269
Subchapter T, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide an Assessment Services Program ................................................. 273
Division 1, Regulation ........................................................................................................ 273
Division 2, Admission ......................................................................................................... 273
Division 3, Assessment Plan ............................................................................................. 274
Division 4, Assessment Report ......................................................................................... 275
Subchapter U, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Therapeutic Camp Services ........................................................................................................ 279
Division 1, Definitions ........................................................................................................ 279
Division 2, Activities Requiring Spotting or Belaying ....................................................... 280
Division 3, Primitive Camping Excursions ........................................................................ 281
Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services ........................................................................................................ 285
Division 1, Definitions and Scope ...................................................................................... 285
Division 2, Policies and Procedures ................................................................................. 287
Division 3, Personnel .......................................................................................................... 288
Division 4, Training ............................................................................................................ 288
Division 5, Child/Caregiver Ratios ................................................................................... 292
Division 6, Admission and Service Planning .................................................................... 293
Appendix A: (Background Check Rules Moved) ................................................................ 299
Appendix B: Definitions of Abuse, Neglect, Exploitation ................................................... 301
Appendix C, Vaccine-Preventable Diseases ..................................................................... 303
Index .................................................................................................................................. 309
Minimum Standards

These minimum standards are developed by the Texas Department of Family and Protective Services (DFPS) with the assistance of child-care operations, parents, lawyers, doctors, and other experts in a variety of fields. The child-care licensing law sets guidelines for what must be included in the standards. The licensing law requires that proposed standards be distributed to child-care operations for a 60-day review and comment period before adopting the proposed standards as rules. The Administrative Procedure and Texas Register Act requires that proposed standards be published for public comment before they are adopted as rules. The department considers recommendations from interested persons or groups in formulating the final draft, which is filed as rules with the Secretary of State. Standards are a product of contributions from many people and groups and thus reflect what the citizens of Texas consider reasonable and minimum.

The minimum standards are also weighted based on risk to children. The weights are: high, medium-high, medium, medium-low, and low. While weights reflect a common understanding of the risk to children presented if a rule is violated, the assigned weights do not change based on the scope or severity of an actual deficiency. Scope and severity are assessed by the Licensing Representative, documented, and considered in conjunction with the standard weights when making Licensing decisions. **Weights are noted in green next to each standard or subsection. Only those standards which can be violated are weighted. For example, definitions are not weighted.**

Maintaining Compliance

It is essential that operation employees and caregivers recognize four critical aspects of Licensing’s efforts to protect the children in care and to help operation employees and caregivers comply with the law, rules, and standards. The four aspects are:

- Inspection
- Technical assistance
- Investigations
- Caregiver’s rights and entitlements

The Inspection

Various aspects of regulated operations are evaluated for compliance with the minimum standards, rules, and law during regular inspections. The emphasis on these inspections is to prevent risk to children in care. All operations are assigned a monitoring frequency based on their compliance history.

A deficiency is any failure to comply with a standard, rule, law, specific term of the permit or condition of evaluation, probation, or suspension. During any inspection, if licensing staff find that the operation does not meet minimum standards, rule, or law, the areas of deficiency are discussed with appropriate operation employees and caregivers. Technical assistance and consultation on the problem areas are provided. Operation employees and caregivers are given the opportunity to discuss disagreements and concerns with licensing staff. If the concerns are not resolved, the operation may request an administrative review.
Technical Assistance

Licensing staff are available to offer consultation to potential applicants, applicants, and permit holders regarding how to comply with minimum standards, rules, and laws. Licensing staff often provide technical assistance during inspections and investigations. However, technical assistance can be requested at any time.

The Child Care Licensing section of the DFPS web site also has a Technical Assistance Library. The Technical Assistance Library allows you to view or download articles and information about a variety of topics related to child care. The DFPS web site is www.dfps.state.tx.us.

Also, “Helpful Information” and “Best Practice Suggestion” follow certain standards in this publication. This information is not a necessary component of meeting standards, but rather it is provided to help you meet the standards in a way best suited for your operation.

Investigations

When a report to Licensing alleges abuse or neglect, standards deficiency, or a violation of law or rule, licensing staff must investigate the report, notify the operation of the investigation, and provide a written report to the operation of the investigation results within prescribed time frames.

Your Rights and Entitlements

Waivers and Variances

If an operation is unable to comply with a standard for economic reasons, or wishes to meet the intent of a standard in a way that is different from what the standard specifies, a waiver or variance of the standard may be requested. The request is made in writing to the operation’s assigned Licensing Representative.

Administrative Review

If an operation disagrees with a Licensing decision or action, the operation may request an administrative review. The operation is given an opportunity to show compliance with applicable law, rule, minimum standards, license restrictions and/or license conditions.

Appeals

An operation may request an appeal hearing on a Licensing decision to deny an application or revoke or suspend a permit or a condition placed on the permit after initial issuance.

Appeal hearings are conducted by the State Office of Administrative Hearings (SOAH).

For Further Information

It is important that operation employees and caregivers clearly understand the purpose of minimum standards and the reasons for Licensing’s inspections. Do not hesitate to ask questions of licensing staff that will help you understand any aspect of Licensing. You may obtain information about licensing standards or procedures by calling your local Licensing office or by visiting the DFPS web site at www.dfps.state.tx.us.
Subchapter A, Purpose and Scope

§748.1. What is the purpose of this chapter?

The purpose of this chapter is to set forth rules that apply to General Residential Operations and Residential Treatment Centers.

§748.3. Who is responsible for complying with the rules of this chapter?

The permit holder must ensure compliance with the rules in this chapter at all times, with the exception of those rules identified for specific types of services that your operation does not offer. For example, if we grant you a permit to offer emergency care services only, you do not have to comply with rules that apply to treatment services for a child with an emotional disorder, treatment services for a child with mental retardation, or a transitional living program; however, you must comply with all other applicable rules of this chapter.

§748.5. How do Residential Treatment Centers comply with the rules of this chapter?

Residential Treatment Centers (RTCs) are general residential operations that provide treatment services to children with emotional disorders. RTCs, by definition, must always comply with the rules of this chapter as if 100% of the children in their care require treatment services for emotional disorders. This includes, but is not limited to, services to individual children, personnel requirements, and child/caregiver ratio requirements.
Subchapter B, Definitions and Services

Division 1, Definitions

§748.41. What do certain pronouns mean in this chapter?

The following words have the following meanings in this chapter:

(1) I, my, you, and your – An applicant or permit holder, unless otherwise stated.

(2) We, us, our, and Licensing – The Licensing Division of the Department of Family and Protective Services (DFPS).

§748.43. What do certain words and terms mean in this chapter?

The words and terms used in this chapter have the meanings assigned to them under §745.21 of this title (relating to What do the following words and terms mean when used in this chapter?), unless another meaning is assigned in this section or unless the context clearly indicates otherwise. The following words and terms have the following meanings unless the context clearly indicates otherwise:

(1) Accredited college or university – An institution of higher education accredited by one of the following:

   (A) Southern Association of Colleges and Schools, Commission on Colleges;

   (B) Middle States Association of Colleges and Schools, Commission on Higher Education;

   (C) New England Association of Schools and Colleges, Commission on Institutions of Higher Education;

   (D) North Central Association of Colleges and Schools, The Higher Learning Commission;

   (E) Northwest Commission on Colleges and Universities;

   (F) Western Association of Schools and Colleges, Accrediting Commission for Senior Colleges and Universities; or

   (G) Western Association of Schools and Colleges, Accrediting Commission for Community and Junior Colleges.

(2) Activity space – An area or room used for child activities.

(continued)
(3) Adaptive functioning – Refers to how effectively a person copes with common life demands and how well the person meets standards of personal independence expected of someone in his particular age group, sociocultural background, and community setting.

(4) Adult – A person 18 years old or older.

(5) Caregiver – A person counted in the child/caregiver ratio, whose duties include the direct care, supervision, guidance, and protection of a child. This does not include a contract service provider who:
   (A) Provides a specific type of service to your operation for a limited number of hours per week or month; or
   (B) Works with one particular child.

(6) Certified lifeguard – A person who has been trained in rescue techniques, life saving, and water safety by a qualified instructor from a recognized organization that awards a certificate upon successful completion of the training. A certified lifeguard ensures the safety of persons by preventing and responding to water related emergencies.

(7) Child/caregiver ratio – The maximum number of children for whom one caregiver can be responsible.

(8) Child in care – A child who is currently admitted as a resident of a general residential operation, regardless of whether the child is temporarily away from the operation, as in the case of a child at school or at work. Unless a child has been discharged from the operation, he is considered a child in care.

(9) Child passenger safety seat system – An infant or child passenger restraint system that meets the federal standards for crash-tested restraint systems as set by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

(10) Cottage home – A living arrangement for children who are not receiving treatment services in which:
   (A) Each group of children has separate living quarters;
   (B) 12 or fewer children are in each group;
   (C) Primary caregivers live in the children’s living quarters, 24 hours per day for at least four days a week or 15 days a month; and
   (D) Other caregivers are used only to meet the child-to-caregiver ratio in an emergency or to supplement care provided by the primary caregivers.

(11) Counseling – A procedure used by professionals from various disciplines in guiding individuals, families, groups, and communities by such activities as delineating alternatives, helping to articulate goals, processing feelings and options, and providing needed information. This definition does not include career counseling.

(12) Days – Calendar days, unless otherwise stated.

(continued)
(13) De-escalation – Strategies used to defuse a volatile situation, to assist a child to regain behavioral control, and to avoid a physical restraint or other behavioral intervention.

(14) Department – The Department of Family and Protective Services (DFPS).

(15) Discipline – Guidance that is constructive or educational in nature and appropriate to the child’s age, development, situation, and severity of the behavior.

(16) Disinfecting solution – A disinfecting solution may be:
   (A) A self-made solution, prepared as follows:
      (i) One tablespoon of regular strength liquid household bleach to each gallon of water used for disinfecting such items as toys, eating utensils, and nonporous surfaces (such as tile, metal, and hard plastics); or
      (ii) One-fourth cup of regular strength liquid household bleach to each gallon of water used for disinfecting surfaces such as bathrooms, crib rails, diaper-changing tables, and porous surfaces, such as wood, rubber or soft plastics; or
   (B) A commercial product that is registered with the Environmental Protection Agency’s (EPA) as an antimicrobial product and includes directions for use in a hospital as a disinfectant. You must use the product according to label directions. Commercial products must not be toxic on surfaces likely to be mouthed by children like crib rails and toys.

(17) Emergency Behavior Intervention – Interventions used in an emergency situation, including personal restraints, mechanical restraints, emergency medication, and seclusion.

(18) Family members – An individual related to another individual within the third degree of consanguinity or affinity. For the definitions of consanguinity and affinity, see Chapter 745 of this title (relating to Licensing). The degree of the relationship is computed as described in Government Code, §573.023 (relating to Computation of Degree of Consanguinity) and §573.025 (relating to Computation of Degree of Affinity).

(19) Field trip – A group activity conducted away from the operation.

(20) Food service – The preparation or serving of meals or snacks.

(21) Full-time – At least 30 hours per week.

(22) Garbage – Food or items that when deteriorating cause offensive odors and/or attract rodents, insects, and other pests.

(23) General Residential Operation – A residential child-care operation that provides child care for 13 or more children or young adults. The care may include treatment services and/or programmatic services. These operations include formerly titled emergency shelters, operations providing basic child care, operations serving children with mental retardation, and halfway houses.

(continued)
(24) Group of children – Children assigned to a specific caregiver or caregivers. Generally, the group stays with the assigned caregiver(s) throughout the day and may move to different areas throughout the operation, indoors and out. For example, children who are assigned to specific caregivers occupying a unit or cottage are considered a group.

(25) Health-care professional – A licensed physician, licensed registered nurse with appropriate advanced practice authorization from the Texas Board of Nurse Examiners, a licensed vocational nurse (LVN), licensed registered nurse (RN), or other licensed medical personnel providing health care to the child within the scope of his license. This does not include medical doctors or medical personnel not licensed to practice in the United States.

(26) High-risk behavior – Behavior of a child that creates an immediate safety risk to self or others. Examples of high-risk behavior include suicide attempt, self-abuse, aggression causing bodily injury, chronic running away, drug addiction, fire-setting, and sexual perpetration.

(27) Human services field – A field of study that contains coursework in the social sciences of psychology and social work including some counseling classes focusing on normal and abnormal human development and interpersonal relationship skills from an accredited college or university. Coursework in guidance counseling does not apply.

(28) Immediate danger – A situation where a prudent person would conclude that bodily harm would occur if there were no immediate interventions. Immediate danger includes a serious risk of suicide, serious physical injury, or the probability of bodily harm resulting from a child running away if under 10 years old chronologically or developmentally. Immediate danger does not include:

(A) Harm that might occur over time or at a later time; or
(B) Verbal threats or verbal attacks.

(29) Infant – A child from birth through 17 months.

(30) Livestock – An animal raised for human consumption or an equine animal.

(31) Living quarters – A structure or part of a structure where a group of children reside, such as a building, house, cottage, or unit.

(32) Mental health professional – Refers to:

(A) A psychiatrist licensed by the Texas Medical Board;
(B) A psychologist licensed by the Texas State Board of Examiners of Psychologists;
(C) A master's level social worker or higher licensed by the Texas State Board of Social Work Examiners;
(D) A professional counselor licensed by the Texas State Board of Examiners of Professional Counselors;

(continued)
(E) A marriage and family therapist licensed by the Texas State Board of Examiners of Marriage and Family Therapists; and

(F) A master’s level or higher nurse licensed as an Advanced Practice Registered Nurse by the Texas Board of Nursing and board certified in Psychiatric/Mental Health.

(33) Non-ambulatory – A child that is only able to move from place to place with assistance, such as a walker, crutches, a wheelchair, or prosthetic leg.

(34) Non-mobile – A child that is not able to move from place to place, even with assistance.

(35) Operation – General residential operations and residential treatment centers.

(36) Parent – A person that has legal responsibility for or legal custody of a child, including the managing conservator or legal guardian.

(37) Person legally authorized to give consent – The person legally authorized to give consent by the Texas Family Code or a person authorized by the court.

(38) Physical force – Pressure applied to a child’s body that reduces or eliminates the child’s ability to move freely.

(39) PRN – A standing order or prescription that applies “pro re nata” or “as needed according to circumstances.”

(40) Psychosocial assessment – An evaluation by a mental health professional of a child’s mental health that includes a:
   (A) Clinical interview of the child;
   (B) Diagnosis from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders 5 (DSM-5), or statement that rules out a DSM-5 diagnosis;
   (C) Treatment plan for the child, including whether further evaluation of the child is needed (for example: is a psychiatric evaluation needed to determine if the child would benefit from psychotropic medication or hospitalization; or is a psychological evaluation with psychometric testing needed to determine if the child has learning disabilities or intellectual disabilities); and
   (D) Written summary of the assessment.

(41) Regularly – On a recurring, scheduled basis. Note: For the definition for “regularly or frequently present at an operation” as it applies to background checks, see §745.601 of this title (relating to What words must I know to understand this subchapter?).

(42) Residential Treatment Center (RTC) – A general residential operation for 13 or more children or young adults that exclusively provides treatment services for children with emotional disorders.

(continued)
(43) Sanitize – A four-step process that must be followed in the subsequent order:
   (A) Washing with water and soap;
   (B) Rinsing with clear water;
   (C) Soaking in or spraying on a disinfecting solution for at least two minutes. Rinsing with cool water only those items that a child is likely to place in his mouth; and
   (D) Allowing the surface or article to air-dry.

(44) School-age child – A child five years old or older who will attend school in August or September of that year.

(45) Seat belt – A lap belt and any shoulder strap included as original equipment on or added to a motor vehicle.

(46) Service plan – A plan that identifies a child’s basic and specific needs and how those needs will be met.

(47) State or local fire inspector – A fire official who is authorized to conduct fire safety inspections on behalf of the city, county, or state government.

(48) State or local sanitation official – A sanitation official who is authorized to conduct environmental sanitation inspections on behalf of the city, county, or state government.

(49) Substantial bodily harm – Physical injury serious enough that a prudent person would conclude that the injury required professional medical attention. It does not include minor bruising, the risk of minor bruising, or similar forms of minor bodily harm that will resolve healthily without professional medical attention.

(50) Toddler – A child from 18 months through 35 months.

(51) Treatment director – The person responsible for the overall treatment program providing treatment services. A treatment director may have other responsibilities and may designate treatment director responsibilities to other qualified persons.

(52) Universal precautions – An approach to infection control where all human blood and certain human body fluids are treated as if known to be infectious for HIV, HBV, and other blood-borne pathogens.

(continued)
Vaccine-preventable disease – A disease that is included in the most current recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

Volunteer – A person who provides:

(A) Child-care services, treatment services, or programmatic services under the auspices of the operation without monetary compensation, including a “sponsoring family;” or

(B) Any type of services under the auspices of the operation without monetary compensation when the person has unsupervised access to a child in care.

Water activities – Activities related to the use of splashing pools, wading pools, swimming pools, or other bodies of water.

Young adult – An adult whose chronological age is between 18 and 22 years, who is currently in a residential child-care operation, and who continues to need child-care services.

Division 2, Services

§748.61. What types of services does Licensing regulate?

We regulate the following types of services:

(1) Child-Care Services – Services that meet a child’s basic need for shelter, nutrition, clothing, nurture, socialization and interpersonal skills, care for personal health and hygiene, supervision, education, and service planning;

(2) Treatment Services – In addition to child-care services, a specialized type of child-care services designed to treat and/or support children:

(A) With Emotional Disorders, such as mood disorders, psychotic disorders, or dissociative disorders, and who demonstrate three or more of the following:

(i) A Global Assessment Functioning of 50 or below;

(ii) A current DSM diagnosis;

(iii) Major self-injurious actions, including recent suicide attempts;

(iv) Difficulties that present a significant risk of harm to others, including frequent or unpredictable physical aggression; or

(v) A primary diagnosis of substance abuse or dependency and severe impairment because of the substance abuse;

(continued)
(B) With Intellectual Disabilities, who have an intellectual functioning of 70 or below and are characterized by prominent, significant deficits and pervasive impairment in one or more of the following areas:
   (i) Conceptual, social, and practical adaptive skills to include daily living and self care;
   (ii) Communication, cognition, or expressions of affect;
   (iii) Self-care activities or participation in social activities;
   (iv) Responding appropriately to an emergency; or
   (v) Multiple physical disabilities, including sensory impairments;

(C) With Pervasive Developmental Disorder, which is a category of disorders (e.g. Autistic Disorder or Rett’s Disorder) characterized by prominent, severe deficits and pervasive impairment in one or more of the following areas of development:
   (i) Conceptual, social, and practical adaptive skills to include daily living and self care;
   (ii) Communication, cognition, or expressions of affect;
   (iii) Self-care activities or participation in social activities;
   (iv) Responding appropriately to an emergency; or
   (v) Multiple physical disabilities including sensory impairments;

(D) With Primary Medical Needs, who cannot live without mechanical supports or the services of others because of life-threatening conditions, including:
   (i) The inability to maintain an open airway without assistance. This does not include the use of inhalers for asthma;
   (ii) The inability to be fed except through a feeding tube, gastric tube, or a parenteral route;
   (iii) The use of sterile techniques or specialized procedures to promote healing, prevent infection, prevent cross-infection or contamination, or prevent tissue breakdown; or
   (iv) Multiple physical disabilities including sensory impairments; and

(E) Determined to be a trafficking victim, including a child:
   (i) Determined to be a trafficking victim as the result of a criminal prosecution or who is currently alleged to be a trafficking victim in a pending criminal investigation or prosecution;
   (ii) Identified by the parent or agency that placed the child in the operation as a trafficking victim; or

(continued)
(iii) Determined by the operation to be a trafficking victim based on reasonably reliable criteria, including one or more of the following:
(I) The child's own disclosure as a trafficking victim;
(II) The assessment of a counselor or other professional; or
(III) Evidence that the child was recruited, harbored, transported, provided to another person, or obtained for the purpose of forced labor or commercial sexual activity; and

(3) Additional Programmatic Services, which include:
(A) Emergency Care Services – A specialized type of child-care services designed and offered to provide short-term child care to children who, upon admission, are in an emergency constituting an immediate danger to the physical health or safety of the child or the child’s offspring;
(B) Transitional Living Program – A residential services program designed to serve children 14 years old or older for whom the service or treatment goal is basic life skills development toward independent living. A transitional living program includes basic life skills training and the opportunity for children to practice those skills. A transitional living program is not an independent living program;
(C) Assessment Services Program – Services to provide an initial evaluation of the appropriate placement for a child to ensure that appropriate information is obtained in order to facilitate service planning;
(D) Therapeutic Camp Services – A camping program to augment an operation’s treatment services with an experiential curriculum exclusively for a child with an emotional disorder who has difficulty functioning in his home, school, or community. Therapeutic camp services are only available to children 13 years old and older; and
(E) Respite Child-Care Services – See §748.73 of this title (relating to What are respite child-care services?).

Helpful Information

Regarding subsection (2)(A), neither attending therapy nor taking a psychotropic medication factors into a child being eligible for treatment services for an emotional disorder. Only the indicators noted above are considered when determining eligibility for treatment services. However, you may offer treatment services to a child you assess as needing those services, regardless of the indicators above.
§748.63. Can I provide each type of service that Licensing regulates?  
Subchapter B, Definitions and Services  
Division 2, Services  
January 2007

You may provide each type of service that we regulate under the following conditions:

1. On your permit, we list the type of service that you have been approved to provide; and

2. Your operational policies and procedures ensure:
   - Children are admitted appropriately;
   - The needs of all children in care are met;
   - Children are appropriately supervised;
   - Children are protected from one another, if appropriate; and
   - You meet the applicable rules of this chapter.

§748.65. What children are eligible to participate in a transitional living program?  
Subchapter B, Definitions and Services  
Division 2, Services  
January 2007

(a) For a child to be eligible to participate in a transitional living program, the child must:

1. Be 14 years old or older; and

2. Not be receiving therapeutic camp services.

(b) For a child to be eligible to receive the level of caregiver supervision described in §748.1019 of this title (relating to What are the supervision requirements for a transitional living program?) or §748.1021 of this title (relating to When does a child who is in a transitional living program not need supervision?), the child must be 16 years old or older.

§748.67. What are the requirements for a transitional living program?  
Subchapter B, Definitions and Services  
Division 2, Services  
January 2007

A transitional living program must have a training program for children that develops competency in the following areas:

1. Health, general safety, and fire safety practices;
2. Money management;
3. Transportation skills;
4. Accessing community and other resources; and
5. Child health and safety, child development, and parenting skills, if the child is a parent of a child living with him.
§748.69. What is an “independent living program”?

Subchapter B, Definitions and Services
Division 2, Services
January 2007

(no weight) An “independent living program” is a program that provides case management services to a child who lives independently, without supervision and child/caregiver ratio, and the constant presence of an on-site caregiver.

§748.71. May I have an independent living program?

Subchapter B, Definitions and Services
Division 2, Services
January 2007

Medium-Low Your operation may not provide an independent living program for a child in care under 18 years old.

§748.73. What are respite child-care services?

Subchapter B, Definitions and Services
Division 2, Services
January 2007

(no weight) Respite child-care services are planned alternative 24-hour care that an operation provides for a child as part of the regulated child care.

§748.75. May I use or provide respite child-care services?

Subchapter B, Definitions and Services
Division 2, Services
January 2007

Medium-Low Only general residential operations that offer emergency care services may provide respite child-care services. Other operations may not provide respite child-care services, and no operation may use respite child-care services. The purpose of respite child-care services is to provide relief to a child’s biological or foster parent, not an employee. Respite for an employee is provided through time off, vacations, holidays, and sick leave.
Subchapter C, Organization and Administration

Division 1, Permit Holder Responsibilities

§748.101. What are my responsibilities as the permit holder before I begin operating?

Before you begin operating, you are responsible for:

1. Ensuring that your operation is legally established to operate within Texas and is complying with all applicable statutes;
2. Establishing the governing body of the operation;
3. Having a governing body that is responsible for, and has authority over, the policies and activities of the operation;
4. Having policies that clearly state the responsibilities of the governing body; and
5. Developing operational policies and procedures that comply with or exceed the rules specified in this chapter, Chapter 42 of the Human Resources Code, Chapter 745 of this title (relating to Licensing), and other applicable laws.

§748.103. What are my operational responsibilities as the permit holder?

(a) When you begin operating, you must:

1. Designate a full-time child-care administrator who meets the minimum qualifications of §748.531 of this title (relating to What qualifications must a child-care administrator meet?);
2. Operate according to the written policies and procedures adopted by the governing body as directed by this chapter;
3. Maintain true, current, accurate, and complete records at your operation for us to review;
4. Ensure that all required documentation is current, accurate, and complete;
5. Allow us to inspect your operation during its hours of operation;
6. Display your permit at the operation;
7. Observe the conditions and restrictions of your permit, except as described in subsection (b) of this section;
8. Not offer unrelated types of services that conflict or interfere with the best interests of a child in care, a caregiver’s responsibilities, or operation space. If you offer more than one type of service, you must determine and document that no conflict exists;

(continued)
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

(9) Maintain liability insurance as required by the Human Resources Code, §42.049;

(10) Comply with Chapters 42 and 43 of the Human Resources Code and the rules of this chapter, and all other applicable laws and rules of the Texas Administrative Code;

(11) Prepare the annual budget and controlling expenditures to ensure the needs of the children are met;

(12) Ensure that no member of the governing body, member of the executive committee, member of management, or employee is listed as a sustained controlling person; and

(13) Notify us as soon as possible, but no later than two days after:

- (A) A new individual becomes a controlling person at your operation; or
- (B) An individual ceases to be a controlling person at your operation.

(b) If you are licensed to provide emergency care services, you may temporarily exceed your licensed capacity for not more than 48 hours to provide temporary care for a child needing emergency care services. You must notify Licensing within 24 hours of the child’s placement that you have temporarily exceeded your licensed capacity.

Helpful Information

Regarding subsection (2), Licensing only enforces this requirement for policies required by the minimum standards. For example, Licensing does not enforce an operation’s policies on purchase approvals. In addition, Licensing will not cite this standard when an operation meets a specific minimum standard but does not meet their policy which requires more than the minimum standard. For example, if an operation’s policy requires caregivers to complete 12 hours of general pre-service training, and inspection results indicate that employees only completed 10 hours of training, no citation will be documented. However, if employees only completed six hours of training, a citation may be documented, since the minimum standards require eight hours of general pre-service training.

Regarding subsection (12), see Chapter 745 of the Texas Administrative Code, Subchapter G, rules §745.901 to §745.909, for more information on controlling persons.

§748.105. What responsibilities do I have for personnel policies and procedures?

Subchapter C, Organization and Administration
Division 1, Permit Holder Responsibilities
June 2014

You must:

(1) Develop a written organizational chart showing the administrative, professional, and staffing structures and lines of authority;

(2) Develop written job descriptions, including minimum qualifications and job responsibilities for each position;

(3) Develop written policies on the training requirements for employees;

(continued)
(4) Develop written policies on whether your operation permits individual caregivers to take children away from the operation for day or overnight visits. The policy must require obtaining the parents’ written approval prior to allowing an overnight visit with staff. The policy must also address the issues outlined in §748.685(e) of this title (relating to What responsibilities does a caregiver have when supervising a child or children?);

(5) Ensure that personnel policies comply with personnel requirements outlined in Subchapter F of Chapter 745 of this title (relating to Background Checks);

(6) Ensure your employees report serious incidents and suspected abuse, neglect, or exploitation. An employee who suspects abuse, neglect, or exploitation must report their suspicion directly to us and may not delegate this responsibility, as directed by Texas Family Code §261.101(b);

(7) Ensure that all employees and consulting, contracting, and volunteer professionals who work with a child and others with access to information about a child are informed in writing of their responsibility to maintain child confidentiality;

(8) Either adopt the model drug testing policy or have a written drug testing policy that meets or exceeds the criteria in the model policy provided in §745.4151 of this title (relating to What drug testing policy must my residential child-care operation have?); and

(9) Develop and implement written policy for vaccine-preventable diseases, unless your operation is in the home of the permit holder, the administrator, or a caregiver. The policy must address the requirements outlined in §748.241 of this title (relating to What must a policy for protecting children from vaccine-preventable diseases include?).

§748.107. What must my conflict of interest policies include?

Your conflict of interest policies must include a code of conduct on the relationship between employees, contract service providers, children in placement, and children’s families, including entering into independent financial relationships or transactions with an employee.
§748.109. May I exceed my operation capacity?

Subchapter C, Organization and Administration
Division 1, Permit Holder Responsibilities
September 2010

No, the number of children and young adults in your care must not exceed the capacity stated on your permit except as described in §748.103(b) of this title (relating to What are my operational responsibilities as the permit holder?). For the purpose of determining whether you exceed your capacity, the number of children in your care includes a caregiver’s own children who are at the operation, if they share general living space, bedroom, and/or bathroom space with children in care, and any children receiving respite child-care services at an operation providing emergency care services.

§748.111. May I provide child day care services?

Subchapter C, Organization and Administration
Division 1, Permit Holder Responsibilities
January 2007

You may provide child day care services under the following conditions:

(1) You don’t provide treatment services to children with emotional disorders;
(2) You care for and supervise children who receive day care services separately from the children receiving residential services; and
(3) You have separate administrative employees and caregivers for each program.

Division 2, Governing Body

§748.131. What are the specific responsibilities of the governing body?

Subchapter C, Organization and Administration
Division 2, Governing Body
September 1, 2008

(a) The governing body is responsible for:

(1) Ensuring the operation remains fiscally sound;
(2) Overseeing and ensuring the management of the operation’s services and programs in compliance with your policies;
(3) Approving and having authority over the operational policies and activities which must comply with rules of this chapter;
(4) Complying with the law, including Chapters 42 and 43 of the Human Resources Code, the applicable rules of this chapter, and other applicable rules in the Texas Administrative Code;

(continued)
Medium (5) Ensuring that the majority of the voting members of the governing body consist of persons who do not have a conflict of interest that would potentially interfere with objective decision making. Persons who have such a conflict of interest include the following:

(A) Family members of:

(i) An officer;

(ii) A director; or

(iii) A person with a controlling interest in the entity’s stock; or

(B) If the governing body is a non-profit entity, persons who benefit financially from the operation, including but not limited to persons employed by or working at the operation, paid consultants, subcontractors, or vendors.

Medium (6) Carrying out governing body responsibilities assigned in the policies and procedures.

(no weight) (b) Regarding subsection (a)(5) of this section:

(1) Operations granted a permit by us before January 2007, have two years to comply with this paragraph; and

(2) Operations granted a permit by us after January 2007, have two years from the date the operation is licensed by us to comply with this paragraph.

§748.133. After a permit has been issued, what subsequent information regarding my governing body must I provide to Licensing, and when must I provide it?

Subchapter C, Organization and Administration
Division 2, Governing Body
January 2007

You must provide to us in writing any change in:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change:</th>
<th>Deadline for notifying us:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) The legal structure of your operation</td>
<td>At least seven working days before making the change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) The composition of the governing body</td>
<td>Within 2 days of such a change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) The information about governing body officers, executive committee, or members, such as name or location changes</td>
<td>Within 15 days of learning about a change</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Division 3, General Fiscal Requirements

§748.161. What are my fiscal requirements?

You must:

Medium-Low
(1) Submit documentation of a 12-month budget of income and expenses to us with the application for a new permit;

Medium
(2) Submit documentation of reserve funds or available credit at least equal to operating costs for the first three months of operation to us with the application for a new permit;

Medium
(3) Have predictable funds sufficient for the first year of operation;

Medium
(4) Demonstrate at all times that you have or will have sufficient funds to provide appropriate services for all children in care; and

Medium-Low
(5) Account for a child’s money separately from the funds of the operation. No child’s personal earnings, allowances, or gifts may be used to pay for the child’s room and board, unless such a use is a part of the child’s service plan and the child’s parent approves it in writing. You must give or send the child’s money to the child, parent, or next placement within 30 days of the child’s discharge.

§748.163. How often must I have a financial records review?

You must have an annual review of your financial records conducted by an independent Certified Public Accountant in accordance with the Generally Accepted Accounting Principles and you must make it available for our review.

Division 4, Required Postings

§748.191. What items must I post at my operation?

The items listed below must be posted in a prominent and publicly accessible place where employees, children, parents, and others may easily view them at all times:

Medium-Low
(1) Your permit;

Medium-Low
(2) The Licensing notice Keeping Children Safe; and

Medium-High
(3) Emergency and evacuation relocation plans posted in each building and living quarters used by children.
Division 5, Policies and Procedures

§748.231. What are the general requirements for my operation’s policies?

(a) The requirements for policies only apply to the operation’s policies that are required or governed by this chapter.

(b) The policies must be written and they must indicate the approval of the governing body, date of approval, and effective date.

(c) The policies must be clearly stated and comply with the rules of this chapter.

(d) All employees must be aware of and follow your policies and procedures. A copy of your policies and procedures must be maintained at the operation and available for employees’ review.

(e) All policies must be available for review by our staff and your clients, upon request.

(f) You must report any significant change to the policies to us at least seven days before implementing the change.

(g) You must maintain copies of all current and previous policies for at least two years.

§748.233. What are the requirements for my admission policies?

Your admission policies must describe each program you offer, including but not limited to:

(1) The program’s goals and services provided, including whether the program accepts emergency admissions;

(2) The characteristics of the population the program serves, such as behaviors or diagnoses. If the program includes treatment services, you must describe the emotional disorders, mental retardation, pervasive developmental disorders, or primary medical needs that the program is designed to treat; and

(3) The gender(s) and age ranges of the population the program serves.
§748.235. What child-care policies must I develop?

Subchapter C, Organization and Administration
Division 5, Policies and Procedures
June 2014

You must develop policies that describe:

Medium  (1) Visitation rights between the child and family members and the child and friends;

Medium  (2) The child’s rights to correspond by mail with family members and friends, including any policies regarding mail restrictions and receipt of electronic mail;

Medium-Low (3) The child’s rights to correspond by telephone with family members and friends;

Medium-Low (4) The child’s rights to receive and give gifts to family, friends, employees, or other children in care, including any restrictions on gifts;

Medium-Low (5) Personal possessions a child is or is not allowed to have;

Medium-High (6) Emergency behavior intervention techniques if the use of emergency behavior intervention is permitted in your operation. If its use is not permitted, you must have a policy disallowing its use;

Medium (7) Discipline policies, including techniques and methods for ensuring the appropriateness of discipline techniques used with a child. These policies and procedures must:

Medium  (A) Guide employees in methods used for discipline of a child;

Medium  (B) Include measures for positive responses to appropriate behavior;

Medium  (C) Make clear that discipline of any type is inappropriate and not permitted for infants; and

Medium  (D) Emphasize the importance of nurturing behavior, stimulation, and promptly meeting the child’s needs;

Medium-Low (8) Any religious program or activity that you offer and whether you require participation by children, if applicable;

Medium-Low (9) Transitional living policies, if you offer such a program;

Medium-Low (10) The plans for meeting the educational needs of each child, including your educational program and required participation by children, if applicable;

Medium (11) When trips with caregivers away from the operation are allowed and what protocols will be used;

Medium (12) Program expectations and rules that apply to all children;

Medium (13) A general daily schedule for routine activities for children in care;

Medium (14) Child grievance procedures;

Medium (15) The type and frequency of reports to parents;

Medium (16) Procedures for routine and emergency diagnosis and treatment of medical and dental problems;

(continued)
Medium (17) Routine health care relating to pregnancy and childbirth, if you admit and/or care for a pregnant child; and

Medium (18) Your plan for providing health-care services to a child with primary medical needs;

Medium-High (19) If applicable, the policy required by §748.3931(3) of this title (relating to Are weapons, firearms, explosive materials, and projectiles permitted at my operation?); and

Medium-High (20) Written plans and procedures for handling disasters and emergencies, such as fire, severe weather, and transportation emergencies. Employees must know the procedures for addressing disasters and emergencies including evacuation procedures, supervision of children, emergency notification of parent, and contacting emergency help. The administrator or designee in charge of the operation must know what action to take in responding to a transportation emergency call. Your plans must include the following:

Medium-High (A) How all children will be relocated to a designated safe area or alternate shelter, including specific procedures for evacuating children who are under 24-months of age, who have limited mobility, or who otherwise may need assistance in an emergency, such as children who have mental, visual or hearing impairments, or a medical condition that requires assistance; and

Medium-High (B) How you will ensure medications and medical equipment will be made available to children with special needs or medical conditions.

§748.237. What emergency behavior intervention policies must I develop if the use of emergency behavior intervention is permitted at my operation?

Subchapter C, Organization and Administration
Division 5, Policies and Procedures
September 2010

At a minimum, you must develop written emergency behavior intervention policies to implement the requirements in Subchapter N of this chapter (relating to Emergency Behavior Intervention). The policies must include the following:

Medium-High (1) A complete description of emergency behavior interventions that you permit caregivers to use;

Medium-High (2) The specific techniques that caregivers can use;

Medium-High (3) The qualifications for caregivers who assume the responsibility for emergency behavior intervention implementation, including required experience and training, and an evaluation component for determining when a specific caregiver meets the requirements of a caregiver qualified in emergency behavior intervention. You must have an on-going program to evaluate caregivers qualified in emergency behavior intervention and the use of emergency behavior interventions;

Medium-High (4) Your requirements for and restrictions on the use of permitted emergency behavior interventions;

(continued)
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

(5) How you will meet the following requirements:

Medium-High  (A) Post the emergency behavior interventions that you allow in a place where
the children and clients can view them, or at admission, provide the children
and clients with a personal copy of the operation’s emergency behavior
intervention policies;

Medium-High  (B) During the orientation required in §748.1209 of this title (relating to What
orientation must I provide a child?), explain and document the following to a
child in a manner that the child can understand:

Medium-High  (i) Who can use emergency behavior intervention;

Medium-High  (ii) The actions a caregiver must first attempt to defuse the situation and
avoid the use of emergency behavior intervention;

Medium-High  (iii) The situations in which emergency behavior intervention may be used;

Medium-High  (iv) The types of emergency behavior intervention you authorize;

Medium-High  (v) When the use of emergency behavior intervention must cease;

Medium-High  (vi) What action the child must exhibit to be released from emergency
behavior intervention;

Medium-High  (vii) The way to report an inappropriate emergency behavior intervention;

Medium  (viii) The way to provide voluntary comments on any emergency behavior
intervention; and

Medium  (ix) The process for making comments on any emergency behavior
intervention, such as comments regarding the incident that led to the
emergency behavior intervention, the manner in which a caregiver
intervened, and the manner in which the child was the subject or to which
he was a witness. You may create a standardized form that is easily
accessible or give children the permission to submit comments on regular
paper; and

Medium-High  (C) During the orientation required in §748.1209 of this title obtain each child’s
input on preferred de-escalation techniques that caregivers can use to assist
the child in the de-escalation process;

Medium-High  (6) Requirements that caregivers must attempt less restrictive and less intrusive
emergency behavior interventions as preventive measures and de-escalating
interventions to avoid the need for the use of emergency behavior intervention;

Medium-High  (7) Training for emergency behavior intervention. The policy must include a
description of the emergency behavior intervention training curriculum that meets
the requirements in the rules of this chapter, the amount and type of training
required for different levels of caregivers (if applicable), training content, and how
the training will be delivered; and

(continued)
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

§748.239. What policies must I develop if I use volunteers?

If you use volunteers, you must develop policies that:

1. Include volunteer job descriptions and/or responsibilities;
2. Address volunteer qualifications, screening and selection procedures, and orientation and training programs;
3. Address supervision of volunteers; and
4. Address visitation with children in care.

§748.241. What must a policy for protecting children from vaccine-preventable diseases include?

A policy for protecting the children in your care from vaccine-preventable diseases must:

1. Specify any vaccines that you have determined an employee must have for vaccine-preventable diseases based on the level of risk the employee presents to children by the employee's routine and direct exposure to children;
2. Require each employee to receive each specified vaccine that the employee is not exempt from having;
3. Include procedures for verifying whether an employee has complied with your policy;
4. Include procedures for an employee to be exempt from having a required vaccine because of:
   A. Medical conditions identified as contraindications or precautions by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC); or
   B. Reasons of conscience, including a religious belief;

(continued)
(5) Include procedures that an exempt employee must follow to protect children in your care from exposure to disease, such as the use of protective medical equipment, including gloves and masks, based on the level of risk the employee presents to children by the employee's routine and direct exposure to children;

(6) Prohibit discrimination or retaliatory action against an exempt employee, except that required use of protective medical equipment, including gloves and masks, may not be considered retaliatory action for purposes of this section;

(7) Outline how you will maintain a written or electronic record of each employee's compliance with or exemption from your policy; and

(8) State the disciplinary actions you may take against an employee who fails to comply with your policy.

Helpful Information

You can find more information on the current immunizations recommended for adults on the Center for Disease Control (CDC) website at:


The specific immunizations needed as an adult vary on such factors including age, overall health as well as persons you are in close contact with. Some immunizations given during adulthood may include:

- **Influenza (Flu)** – this immunization helps protect against the flu. When determining if a flu shot is required some factors to consider are people at a higher of risk of severe flu and persons with close contact with others who are at a higher risk of flu including persons who care for children younger than 12 months of age.

- **HepA (Hepatitis)** – this immunization helps protect against the hepatitis A disease. Factors to be considered when determining the need for the HepA immunization can include anyone who will be in close contact with a person or child from a country that has high rates of Hepatitis A.

- **Pertussis (Whooping Cough)** – two immunizations known as DTap and Tdap help protect against this disease. Whooping cough is very contagious and most severe for babies. Factors to consider when determining the need for this immunization include determining the level of risk associated with certain persons and caregivers who are in close contact with infants. It is important to understand that whooping cough is usually spread by coughing or sneezing and many babies who get whooping cough are infected by persons including caregivers who might not even know they have the disease.

For additional information regarding the development of your policy for protecting children from vaccine-preventable diseases please refer to Appendix B: Vaccine-Preventable Diseases.
Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping

Division 1, Reporting Serious Incidents and Other Occurrences

§748.301 What is a serious incident?

A serious incident is a non-routine occurrence that has or may have dangerous or significant consequences on the care, supervision, and/or treatment of a child.

§748.303. When must I report and document a serious incident?

(a) You must report and document the following types of serious incidents involving a child in your care. The reports must be made to the following entities, and the reporting and documenting must be within the specified time frames:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serious Incident</th>
<th>(i) To Licensing? (ii) If so, when?</th>
<th>(i) To Parents? (ii) If so, when?</th>
<th>(i) To Law Enforcement? (ii) If so, when?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) A child dies while in your care.</td>
<td>(A)(i) YES A(ii) Report as soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after the incident or occurrence.</td>
<td>(B)(i) YES B(ii) Immediately.</td>
<td>(C)(i) YES (C)(ii) Immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) A critical injury or illness that warrants treatment by a medical professional or hospitalization, including dislocated, fractured, or broken bones; concussions; lacerations requiring stitches; second and third degree burns; and damage to internal organs.</td>
<td>(A)(i) YES A(ii) Report as soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after the incident or occurrence.</td>
<td>(B)(i) YES B(ii) Report as soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after the incident or occurrence.</td>
<td>(C)(i) NO (C)(ii) Not Applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Allegations of abuse, neglect, or exploitation of a child; or any incident where there are indications that a child in care may have been abused, neglected, or exploited.</td>
<td>(A)(i) YES A(ii) As soon as you become aware of it.</td>
<td>(B)(i) YES B(ii) As soon as you become aware of it.</td>
<td>(C)(i) NO (C)(ii) Not applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serious Incident</th>
<th>(i) To Licensing? (ii) If so, when?</th>
<th>(i) To Parents? (ii) If so, when?</th>
<th>(i) To Law Enforcement? (ii) If so, when?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(4) Physical abuse committed by a child against another child. For the purpose of this subsection, physical abuse is: physical injury that results in substantial bodily harm and requiring emergency medical treatment, excluding any accident; or failure to make a reasonable effort to prevent an action by another person that results in physical injury that results in substantial bodily harm to a child.</td>
<td>(A)(i) YES (A)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after the occurrence or incident.</td>
<td>(B)(i) YES (B)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after the occurrence or incident.</td>
<td>(C)(i) NO (C)(ii) Not applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) Sexual abuse committed by a child against another child. For the purpose of this subsection, sexual abuse is: conduct harmful to a child's mental, emotional or physical welfare, including nonconsensual sexual activity between children of any age, and consensual sexual activity between children with more than 24 months difference in age or when there is a significant difference in the developmental level of the children; or failure to make a reasonable effort to prevent sexual conduct harmful to a child.</td>
<td>(A)(i) YES (A)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after the occurrence or incident.</td>
<td>(B)(i) YES (B)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after the occurrence or incident.</td>
<td>(C)(i) NO (C)(ii) Not applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6) A child is indicted, charged, or arrested for a crime, not including being issued a ticket at school by law enforcement or any other citation that does not result in the child being detained.</td>
<td>(A)(i) YES (A)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after you become aware of it.</td>
<td>(B)(i) YES (B)(ii) As soon as you become aware of it.</td>
<td>(C)(i) NO (C)(ii) Not applicable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

**Serious Incident**

1. **(7) A child developmentally or chronologically under 6 years old is absent from your operation and cannot be located, including the removal of a child by an unauthorized person.**
   - (A)(i) **YES**
   - (A)(ii) Within 2 hours of notifying law enforcement.
   - (B)(i) **YES**
   - (B)(ii) Within 2 hours of notifying law enforcement.
   - (C)(i) **YES**
   - (C)(ii) Immediately upon determining the child is not on the premises and the child is still missing.

2. **(8) A child developmentally or chronologically 6 to 12 years old is absent from your operation and cannot be located, including the removal of a child by an unauthorized person.**
   - (A)(i) **YES**
   - (A)(ii) Within 2 hours of notifying law enforcement, if the child is still missing.
   - (B)(i) **YES**
   - (B)(ii) Within 2 hours of determining the child is not on the premises, if the child is still missing.
   - (C)(i) **YES**
   - (C)(ii) Within 2 hours of determining the child is not on the premises, if the child is still missing.

3. **(9) A child 13 years old or older is absent from your operation and cannot be located, including the removal of a child by an unauthorized person.**
   - (A)(i) **YES**
   - (A)(ii) No later than 24 hours from when the child's absence is discovered and the child is still missing.
   - (B)(i) **YES**
   - (B)(ii) No later than 24 hours from when the child's absence is discovered and the child is still missing.
   - (C)(i) **YES**
   - (C)(ii) No later than 24 hours from when the child's absence is discovered and the child is still missing.

4. **(10) A child in your care contracts a communicable disease that the law requires you to report to the Department of State Health Services (DSHS) as specified in 25 TAC Chapter 97, Subchapter A, (relating to Control of Communicable Diseases).**
   - (A)(i) **YES**, unless the information is confidential.
   - (A)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after you become aware of the communicable disease.
   - (B)(i) **YES**, if their child contracted the communicable disease or has been exposed to it.
   - (B)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after you become aware of the communicable disease.
   - (C)(i) **NO**
   - (C)(ii) Not applicable.

5. **(11) A suicide attempt by a child.**
   - (A)(i) **YES**
   - (A)(ii) As soon as you become aware of the incident.
   - (B)(i) **YES**
   - (B)(ii) As soon as you become aware of the incident.
   - (C)(i) **NO**
   - (C)(ii) Not applicable.

* (continued)
(b) If there is a serious incident involving an adult resident, you do not have to report the incident to Licensing, but you must document the incident. You do have to report the incident to law enforcement, as outlined in the chart above. You also have to report the incident to the parents, if the adult resident is not capable of making decisions about his own care.

(c) You must report and document the following types of serious incidents involving your operation, an employee, a professional level service provider, or a volunteer to the following entities within the specified time frame:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serious Incident</th>
<th>(i) To Licensing? (ii) If so, when?</th>
<th>(i) To Parents? (ii) If so, when?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| (1) Any incident that renders all or part of your operation unsafe or unsanitary for a child, such as a fire or a flood. | (A)(i) YES  
(A)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after the incident. | (B)(i) YES  
(B)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after the incident. |
| (2) A disaster or emergency that requires your operation to close. | (A)(i) YES  
(A)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after the incident. | (B)(i) YES  
(B)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after the incident. |
| (3) An adult who has contact with a child in care contracts a communicable disease noted in 25 TAC 97, Subchapter A, (relating to Control of Communicable Diseases). | (A)(i) YES, unless the information is confidential.  
(A)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after you become aware of the communicable disease. | (B)(i) YES, if their child has contracted the communicable disease or has been exposed to it.  
(B)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after you become aware of the communicable disease. |
| (4) An allegation that a person under the auspices of your operation who directly cares for or has access to a child in the operation has abused drugs within the past seven days. | (A)(i) YES  
(A)(ii) Within 24 hours after learning of the allegation. | (B)(i) NO  
(B)(ii) Not applicable. |

(continued)
### Serious Incident

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serious Incident</th>
<th>(i) To Licensing?</th>
<th>(ii) If so, when?</th>
<th>(i) To Parents?</th>
<th>(ii) If so, when?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(5) An investigation of abuse or neglect by an entity (other than Licensing) of an employee, professional level service provider, volunteer, or other adult at the operation.</td>
<td>(A)(i) YES</td>
<td>(A)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after you become aware of the investigation.</td>
<td>(B)(i) NO</td>
<td>(B)(ii) Not applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Middle

| (6) An arrest, indictment, or a county or district attorney accepts an “Information” regarding an official complaint against an employee, professional level service provider, or volunteer alleging commission of any crime as provided in §745.651 of this title (relating to What types of criminal convictions may affect a person’s ability to be present at an operation?). | (A)(i) YES       | (A)(ii) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after you become aware of the situation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | (B)(i) NO        | (B)(ii) Not applicable. |

Middle

#### Helpful Information

*Regarding subsection (a)(2), not every trip to a hospital or emergency clinic must be reported as a serious incident. Only those incidents involving a “critical injury or illness” must be reported and documented as a serious incident. The rule contains some examples of reportable serious incidents. Visits to the emergency room or emergency clinic (that did not result in hospitalization) for a common illness such as the flu, for a chronic illness such as an asthma attack, or for a routine medical exam would not warrant reporting as a serious incident.*

*Also, it is the nature of the injury or illness that determines whether it is reportable as a serious incident, not the venue in which it is treated. Taking a child to the emergency clinic or doctor’s office for stitches is still reportable as a serious incident, even though the treatment did not occur at an emergency room or hospital.*

*Regarding children receiving treatment services for primary medical needs, planned admissions to the hospital are not reportable as serious incidents. If the child sustains a critical injury or contracts a critical illness, a serious incident report is required. However, ongoing treatment for the child’s chronic illnesses or conditions is not reportable as a serious incident.*

*In addition, admission to a psychiatric hospital only warrants a serious incident report if the admission is precipitated by a reportable incident, such as a suicide attempt. The admission itself is not reportable as a serious incident.*

#### §748.305. What constitutes a suicide attempt by a child?

*Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping*  
*Division 1, Reporting Serious Incidents and Other Occurrences*  
*September 2010*

(no weight) A suicide attempt is a child’s attempt to take his own life using means or methods for causing his death, including any act a child commits intending to cause his death, but excluding suicidal gestures where it is clear that the act was unlikely to cause death. Suicidal thoughts are not reportable as a suicide attempt.
§748.307. When must I report other occurrences?

You must report and document the following occurrences to the following entities within the specified time frame:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occurrences</th>
<th>(i) To Licensing? (ii) If so, when?</th>
<th>(i) To Parents? (ii) If so, when?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Medically pertinent incidents, such as seizures, that do not rise to</td>
<td>(A)(i) NO (A)(ii) Not applicable;</td>
<td>(B)(i) YES (B)(ii) Within seven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the level of a serious incident.</td>
<td>however, you must document the</td>
<td>days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>type of incident including the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>date, time, action taken, and child's name.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Adding a swimming pool or other permanent body of water.</td>
<td>(A)(i) YES, in writing. (A)(ii)</td>
<td>(B)(i) NO (B)(ii) Not applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Within 15 days before construction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>begins.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Within seven days after the action</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is taken.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§748.309. How do I make a report of a serious incident or occurrence to Licensing?

(a) All serious incident reports must be made to the Child Abuse Hotline; and

(b) Occurrences that are required to be reported to Licensing in writing must be forwarded to your Licensing representative (See §748.307(2) and (3) of this title (relating to When must I report other occurrences?).

§748.311. How must I document a serious incident?

A serious incident must be documented in a written report that includes the following information:

1. The name of the operation, physical address, and telephone number;
2. The time and date of the incident;
3. The name, age, gender, and date of admission of the child or children involved;
4. The names of all adults involved and their role in relation to the child(ren);
5. The names or other means of identifying witnesses to the incident, if any;
(6) The nature of the incident;
(7) The circumstances surrounding the incident;
(8) Interventions made during and after the incident, such as medical interventions, contacts made, and other follow-up actions;
(9) The treating licensed health-care professional’s name, findings, and treatment, if any; and
(10) The resolution of the incident.

Helpful Information

Regarding subsection (3), this requirement is not intended to conflict with confidentiality laws or rights. Identifying information for one child should not be placed in the record of another child. You may choose to 1) write one incident report that is filed centrally (not in each child’s record) and de-identified when released as part of a child’s record, 2) write one incident report that is filed in each child’s record, with each copy de-identified to not show the full name of other children involved in the incident, or 3) write a separate incident report for each child, with only the first name or initials of each other child involved.

Regarding subsection (5), witnesses to the incident are persons who were present when the incident occurred and can give a first-hand account of what they experienced during the incident. A person is not automatically a witness because he lives in the same unit or cottage as the child involved in the incident. Witnesses may also be persons unaffiliated with the operation, such as a visitor to the operation who was present at the time of the incident.

§748.313. What additional documentation must I include with a written serious incident report?

You must include the following additional documentation with a written serious incident report, as applicable:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serious Incident</th>
<th>Documentation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Child death, suicide attempt, or a critical injury reportable under §748.303(a)(1), (2), and (11) of this title (relating to When must I report and document a serious incident?).</td>
<td>Any emergency behavior interventions implemented on the child within 48 hours prior to the serious incident.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Any critical injury reportable under §748.303(a)(2) of this title that resulted from a short personal restraint.</td>
<td>Documentation of the short personal restraint, including the precipitating circumstances and specific behaviors that led to the emergency behavior intervention.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serious Incident</th>
<th>Documentation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(3) Child absent without permission.</td>
<td>(A) Any efforts made to locate the child;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(B) The date and time you notified the parent(s) and the appropriate law enforcement agency and the names of the persons with whom you spoke regarding the child’s absence and subsequent location or return to the operation; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(C) If the parent cannot be located, dates and times of all efforts made to notify the parent regarding the child’s absence and subsequent location or return to the operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Any abusive behavior among children reportable under §748.303(a)(4) or (5) of this title.</td>
<td>The difference in size, age, and developmental level of the children involved in the abusive behavior.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### §748.315. Where must I keep incident reports?

**Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping**

**Division 1, Reporting Serious Incidents and Other Occurrences**

**January 2007**

- (a) You must keep the incident reports on file at the operation for two years.
- (b) You must permit Licensing to make a copy of incident reports, as requested.

#### Division 2, Operation Records

#### §748.341. If I keep electronic records, what procedures must I have for those records?

**Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping**

**Division 2, Operation Records**

**January 2007**

- (a) If you keep electronic records, you must develop procedures that address what must be in the external paper file and what can be in the electronic file.
- (b) You must limit access to your electronic files to:
  - (1) Persons within your operation authorized to see specific information; and
  - (2) Others outside of your operation authorized by law to have access to specific information.

(continued)
(c) You must develop policies that address the following:

Medium-Low  (1) Computer security systems, including confidentiality, passwords, and employee procedures to ensure security of the system;
Low          (2) Requirements for routine back up of data; and
Medium-Low  (3) Anti-virus protection systems.

Division 3, Personnel Records

§748.361. Where must I maintain personnel records?

Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping
Division 3, Personnel Records
September 2010

Medium-Low  (a) You must maintain active personnel records at the operation. This may include electronic records per §748.341 of this title (relating to If I keep electronic records, what procedures must I have for those records?).

Medium-Low  (b) You must maintain archived personnel records at the operation and/or in a designated location, as long as they are available for our review within 48 hours.

(no weight)  (c) You may archive entire closed personnel records electronically.

Medium-Low  (d) Your system for maintaining all personnel records must be uniform throughout the operation.

Medium-Low  (e) You must maintain a master list of active and archived personnel records and their location in the main office of the operation.

§748.363. What information must the personnel record of an employee include?

Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping
Division 3, Personnel Records
March 2014

For each employee, the personnel record must include:

Medium     (1) Documentation showing the date of employment;
Medium     (2) Documentation showing how the person meets the minimum age and qualifications for the position;
Medium     (3) A current job description;
Medium     (4) Evidence of any valid professional licensures, certifications, or registrations the person must have to meet qualifications for the position, such as a current renewal card or a letter from the credentialing entity verifying that the person has met the required renewal criteria;
Medium     (5) A copy of the record of tuberculosis screening conducted prior to the person having contact with children in care showing that the employee is free of contagious tuberculosis as provided in §748.1583 of this title (relating to Who must have a tuberculosis (TB) examination?);

(continued)
(6) A notarized Licensing Affidavit for Applicants for Employment form as specified in Human Resources Code, §42.059;

(7) A statement signed and dated by the employee documenting that the employee has read a copy of the:

(A) Operational policies; and

(B) Personnel policies;

(8) A statement signed and dated by the employee documenting:

(A) That the employee must immediately report any suspected incident of child abuse, neglect, or exploitation to the Child Abuse Hotline and to the operation’s administrator or administrator’s designee; and

(B) The date the employee attended pre-service training in measures to prevent, identify, treat, and report suspected occurrences of child abuse (including sexual abuse), neglect, and exploitation, as required by §748.881(2) of this title (relating to What curriculum components must be included in the general pre-service training?);

(9) Proof of request for background checks required by Chapter 745, Subchapter F of this title (relating to Background Checks);

(10) For each person who transports a child, a copy of:

(A) The person’s valid driver’s license; or

(B) A driver’s license check conducted through the Texas Department of Public Safety within the last 12 months;

(11) A record of training and training hours;

(12) Any documentation of the person’s tenure with the operation; and

(13) The date and reason for the person’s separation, if applicable.

§748.365. What information regarding personnel must be kept confidential?

All background check results must be kept confidential, in accordance with HRC §40.005, subsections (d) and (e). Background check results must be protected from unauthorized access or release.
Division 4, Child Records

§748.391. What is an active child record? *Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping
Division 4, Child Records
January 2007*

Medium
An active child record consists of the child’s record for the most recent 12 months of service.

§748.393. How must I maintain an active child record? *Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping
Division 4, Child Records
September 2010*

Medium-Low
(a) You must keep active child records at the operation where the child is receiving services. This may include electronic records per §748.341 of this title (relating to If I keep electronic records, what procedures must I have for those records?).

(b) On an on-going basis, you must ensure that each child’s record:

Medium
(1) Includes the child’s full name and another method of identifying the child, such as a client number;

Medium-High
(2) Includes documentation of known allergies and chronic health conditions on the exterior of the child’s record or in another place where the information is clearly visible to persons with access to the record, including a notation of “no known allergies” when applicable;

Medium
(3) Includes the date of each data entry and the name of the employee who makes the data entry;

Medium
(4) Is kept accurate and current;

Medium
(5) Is locked and kept in a safe location; and

Medium
(6) Is kept confidential as required by law.

§748.395. How current must a child’s record be? *Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping
Division 4, Child Records
January 2007*

All documentation must be in the record:

Low
(1) No later than 30 days after the occurrence or event;

Low
(2) Within 15 days from the end of the month for monthly summaries; or

Medium-Low
(3) As otherwise specified in this chapter.
§748.397. Who must consent to the release of a child’s record?

Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping
Division 4, Child Records
January 2007

Medium-Low

Unless you are releasing the record to the parents, to us, or as required by law, you may not release any portion of a child’s record to any agency, organization, or individual without the written consent of the person legally authorized to consent to the release.

§748.399. Must I make records available for Licensing to review?

Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping
Division 4, Child Records
January 2007

Medium

(a) You must make all active records available for our immediate review and reproduction.

Medium

(b) We must have reasonable access to your storage and file areas in order to monitor your record keeping.

§748.401. How must I maintain a child’s record that is not active?

Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping
Division 4, Child Records
January 2007

Medium-Low

These records must be available for our review within 48 hours. Otherwise, the records may be archived electronically or kept anywhere and in any manner, as long as they are safe from damage or destruction.

Division 5, Record Retention

§748.431. How long must I maintain personnel records?

Subchapter D, Reports and Record Keeping
Division 5, Record Retention
January 2007

Medium-Low

(a) You must maintain annual training records for current personnel for the last full training year and current training year.

Medium-Low

(b) With the exception of subsection (a) of this section, you must maintain personnel records for a year after an employee’s last day of employment or until any investigation involving the employee is resolved, whichever is longer.
§748.433. How long must I maintain child records?

You must maintain a child’s complete record from admittance to discharge for two years from the date of discharge, or until the resolution of any investigation involving the child, whichever is longer.

§748.435. What procedures must I have for protecting records?

You must have procedures for protecting electronic and paper records from loss and unauthorized access.
Subchapter E, Personnel

Division 1, General Requirements

§748.501. What must my written professional staffing plan include?

Your written and implemented professional staffing plan must:

1. Demonstrate that the number, qualifications, and responsibilities of professional positions, including the child-care administrator, are appropriate for the size and scope of your services and that workloads are reasonable enough to meet the needs of the children in care;

2. Describe in detail the qualifications, duties, responsibilities, and authority of professional positions. For each position, the plan must show whether employment is on a full-time, part-time, or continuing consultative basis. For part-time and consulting positions, the plan must specify the number of hours and/or frequency of services; and

3. Document your staffing patterns, including your child/caregiver ratios, hours of coverage, and plans for providing backup caregivers in emergencies.

§748.503. Does education received outside of the United States count toward educational qualifications?

Yes, however you must provide supporting information indicating that the education is equivalent to the minimum educational qualifications for the position for which the person is applying. Documents written in a foreign language must be translated into English.

§748.505. What minimum qualifications must all employees meet?

(a) An employee’s behavior or health status must not present a danger to children in care.

(b) Each employee who is regularly or frequently present while children are in care must:

1. Meet the requirements in Subchapter F of Chapter 745 of this title (relating to Background Checks);

(continued)
(2) Have a record of a tuberculosis screening showing the employee is free of contagious TB as provided in §748.1583 of this title (relating to Who must have a tuberculosis (TB) examination);

(3) Be physically, mentally, and emotionally capable of performing assigned tasks and have the skills necessary to perform assigned tasks; and

(4) Complete a notarized Licensing Affidavit for Applicants for Employment form, as specified in Human Resources Code, §42.059.

§748.507. What general responsibilities do all employees have?

Regardless of whether the employee is counted in the child/caregiver ratio, each employee must:

(1) In the absence of a more specific rule requirement, demonstrate competency, prudent judgment, and self-control in the presence of children and when performing assigned responsibilities;

(2) Report suspected abuse, neglect, and exploitation to the Child Abuse Hotline and to the designated employee or administrator; and

(3) Know and comply with rules of this chapter, Chapter 42 of the Human Resources Code, Chapter 745 of this title (relating to Licensing), and any other laws which are relevant to the person’s duties.

Helpful Information

Regarding subsection (1), this is only cited by Licensing when a more specific rule requirement does not apply to the incident. For example, if a caregiver loses their temper and inappropriately disciplines a child in care, this would be cited using §748.2301(b), or another relevant standard in Subchapter M (relating to Discipline and Punishment).

This subsection is not cited when a more specific rule is cited regarding the incident.

§748.509. What are the requirements for tuberculosis screening?

Before having contact with children in care, all caregivers, employees, volunteers, and contract service providers must be screened for tuberculosis as provided in §748.1583 of this title (relating to Who must have a tuberculosis (TB) examination?).
Division 2, Child-Care Administrator

§748.531. What qualifications must a child-care administrator meet?

(a) A child-care administrator must:

1. Meet the qualifications established by the operation’s governing body;
2. Be a Licensed Child-Care Administrator according to Chapter 43 of the Human Resources Code and Subchapter N of Chapter 745 of this title (relating to Administrator’s Licensing); and
3. Be a full-time employee of the operation.

(b) If acting as the administrator for two residential child-care operations under §748.533 of this title (relating to Can a child-care administrator be an administrator for two residential child-care operations?), the administrator must split a full-time schedule between the two operations as described in the professional staffing plans for each operation.

§748.533. Can a child-care administrator be an administrator for two residential child-care operations?

(a) Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, a child-care administrator can be an administrator for two residential child-care operations, including a child-placing agency, if:

1. Both operations are in good standing with Licensing;
2. The size and scope of the operations are manageable by one person, which is clarified in the written professional staffing plans;
3. The child-placing agency, if applicable, is not managing more than 25 foster homes;
4. The person also holds a valid Child-Placing Agency Administrator License, if applicable; and
5. The general residential operations and/or RTCs are contiguous. A child-placing agency does not have to be contiguous.

(b) An operation that provides emergency care services must designate an employee in the staffing plan that is solely responsible for administering those services. This employee must have the experience and background to be able to perform the child-care administrator responsibilities. See §748.535 of this title (relating to What responsibilities must the child-care administrator designated to be responsible for the on-site administration of the operation have?). A designated employee, other than the child-care administrator for the operation, is not required if the emergency care services program has a capacity of not more than 30 children.
§748.535. What responsibilities must the child-care administrator designated to be responsible for the on-site administration of the operation have?

The child-care administrator must:

1. Have daily supervision and on-site administrative responsibility for the overall operation; and
2. Be responsible for or assign responsibility for:
   A. Overseeing staffing patterns to ensure the supervision and the provision of child-care services that meet the needs of children in care;
   B. Ensuring the provision of planned but flexible program activities designed to meet the developmental needs of children;
   C. Having a system in place to ensure an employee is available to handle emergencies;
   D. Assigning tasks to caregivers that do not conflict or interfere with caregiver responsibilities;
   E. Administering and managing the operation according to the policies adopted by the governing body;
   F. Ensuring that the operation complies with applicable rules of this chapter, Chapter 42 of the Human Resources Code, Chapter 745 of this title (relating to Licensing), and other applicable laws;
   G. Ensuring a child in care does not act as a caregiver; and
   H. Ensuring persons whose behavior or health status presents a danger to children are not allowed at the operation.

§748.537. What must the system for ensuring that an employee is available to handle emergencies include?

1. A person designated to handle emergencies must be on call and accessible to your caregivers.
2. You must inform all caregivers and us of the system and how to contact the person on call in case of an emergency.
3. The employee is not required to be a Licensed Child-Care Administrator.
§748.539. Who must have overall administrative responsibility when the child-care administrator is absent on a frequent and/or extended basis?

Medium  
(a) The child-care administrator must designate an employee to be responsible for the overall administration of the operation while the administrator is absent on a frequent and/or extended basis.

Medium  
(b) The designee must be a Licensed Child-Care Administrator as required in Chapter 43 of the Human Resources Code.

Division 3, Professional Level Service Providers

§748.561. What professional level service activities must a professional level service provider perform at my operation?

A professional level service provider must perform the following functions:

Medium-Low  
(1) Completing an admission assessment or any other evaluation of a child for placement;

Medium  
(2) Developing, reviewing, and updating of service plans for a child in care;

Medium-Low  
(3) Completing a discharge or transfer summary for a child;

Medium-Low  
(4) Approving any restrictions that will be imposed on a child for more than seven days that have not been reviewed and approved by the treatment director or service planning team, and any monthly re-evaluations of restrictions that continue for more than 30 days;

Medium-Low  
(5) Approving any restrictions to communication and visitation with the child's family that are imposed on a child, but have not been reviewed and approved by the treatment director or service planning team, including monthly re-evaluations of restrictions that continue for more than 30 days; and

Medium-Low  
(6) Approving any restrictions to a particular room or building for more than 24 hours that are imposed on a child, but have not been reviewed and approved by the treatment director or service planning team.
§748.563. What professional qualifications must a professional level service provider have in order to perform professional level service activities?

Subchapter E, Personnel
Division 3, Professional Level Service Providers
September 2010

(a) If you provide treatment services to 25 or more children with emotional disorders, or if more than 30% of the children in your care receive treatment services for emotional disorders, a professional level service provider must have the following qualifications:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educational qualifications</th>
<th>Professional qualifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A master’s degree or higher from an accredited college or university in social work or other human services field and nine credit hours in graduate level courses that focus on family and individual function and interaction.</td>
<td>One year of documented full-time work experience in a treatment setting serving children, including RTCs, child-placing agencies providing treatment services, psychiatric hospitals serving children, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) If you provide treatment services to 25 or more children with primary medical needs, or if more than 30% of the children in your care receive treatment services for primary medical needs, a professional level service provider must have the following qualifications:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educational qualifications</th>
<th>Professional qualifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A nurse’s degree or higher.</td>
<td>One year of documented full-time work experience in a medical or residential setting serving children with primary medical needs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) To provide services for any other children, a professional level service provider must have the following qualifications:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Educational qualifications</th>
<th>Professional qualifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Option 1</td>
<td>(A) A master’s degree or higher from an accredited college or university in social work or other human services field; and (B) Nine credit hours in graduate level courses that focus on family and individual function and interaction.</td>
<td>One year of documented full-time work experience in a residential child-care operation, or related field of child and family services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option 2</td>
<td>A master’s degree or higher from an accredited college or university.</td>
<td>Two years of documented full-time work experience in a residential child-care operation, or related field of child and family services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option 3</td>
<td>A bachelor’s degree from an accredited college or university in social work or other human services field.</td>
<td>Two years of documented full-time work experience in a residential child-care operation, or related field of child and family services.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

Options | Educational qualifications | Professional qualifications
---|---|---
Option 4 | A bachelor’s degree from an accredited college or university. | Three years of documented full-time work experience in a residential child-care operation, or related field of child and family services.

(d) A person who is a professional level service provider at your operation on or before the effective date of these rules may have the following qualifications in lieu of those set forth in subsection (c) of this section:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Educational qualifications</th>
<th>Professional qualifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Option 1</td>
<td>A bachelor’s degree from an accredited college or university.</td>
<td>No qualifications are needed if the professional level service provider is directly supervised by a service provider who meets one of the qualifications in subsection (a) or (c) of this section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option 2</td>
<td>Educational requirements for a Licensed Child-Care Administrator.</td>
<td>Child-Care Administrator’s License.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§748.565. How must a professional level service provider document approval of professional level service functions?

A professional level service provider must sign and date the following documents to indicate review and approval or disapproval:

1. Admission assessments or any other evaluation of a child for placement;
2. Initial service plans, updates, and reviews;
3. Discharge or transfer summaries;
4. Any restrictions that will be imposed on a child for more than seven days that have not been reviewed and approved by the treatment director or service planning team;
5. Any restrictions to communication and visitation with the child’s family that are imposed on a child, but have not been reviewed and approved by the treatment director or service planning team; and
6. Any restrictions to a particular room or building for more than 24 hours that are imposed on a child, but have not been reviewed and approved by the treatment director or service planning team.
§748.567. What are the requirements for the caseloads of a professional level service provider?

Subchapter E, Personnel
Division 3, Professional Level Service Providers
January 2007

Medium There is not a maximum caseload for a professional level service provider; however, you must ensure manageable caseloads that allow professional level service providers to meet the needs of children on their caseload.

§748.569. Must I have health-care professionals on staff or on contract if I provide services to children with primary medical needs?

Subchapter E, Personnel
Division 3, Professional Level Service Providers
September 2010

Medium-High If you provide treatment services to 25 or more children with primary medical needs or if more than 30% of the children in your care receive treatment services for primary medical needs:

(1) You must have a licensed registered nurse on staff or on contract to respond to emergencies, questions, or other medical issues. A registered nurse must work full-time at the operation. A registered nurse in this position may be relieved on days off by a licensed registered nurse or by a licensed vocational nurse with appropriate supervision as defined in Tex. Occ. Code §301.353.

(2) You must arrange for:

A 24-hour availability of nursing, medical, and psychiatric services;

B Licensed nursing services, including 24-hour nursing direction or supervision;

C Assistance with mobility;

D Routine adjustments or replacement of medical equipment; and

E As needed, caregiver supervision of children during the provision of medical and dental services.

(3) You must ensure that a physician on staff or on contract recommends and approves services at each initial diagnosis and at each review.
§748.571. What are the responsibilities of a registered nurse at an operation that provides services to a child with primary medical needs?

The responsibilities of a registered nurse include:

1. Performing a nursing assessment of the child to include documentation of the child’s diagnosed medical needs and selection of placement;
2. Leading the service planning process for the child’s care including registered nurse delegation of tasks or exemption from the registered nurse delegation in compliance with 22 TAC, Chapters 224 and 225 of the Texas Board of Nurse Examiners rules;
3. Directing the health care training of unlicensed caregivers, such as care of a permanently placed feeding tube;
4. Ensuring non-mobile children are turned every two hours to increase circulation and to prevent bedsores or contractures, unless medical orders are to the contrary. This procedure must be documented in the child’s record;
5. Reviewing medical records;
6. Contacting other professionals, as needed, for the child’s care;
7. On-site visits for nursing assessments and child record reviews, including compliance with written physician orders;
8. Monitoring the implementation of the child’s service plan; and
9. Documenting outcomes for interventions used in the child’s care.

§748.573. What are the requirements for other nursing personnel for an operation that provides treatment services to 25 or more children with primary medical needs, or for an operation in which more than 30% of the children in care receive treatment services for primary medical needs?

Your nursing personnel must:

1. Be awake and available at the operation on a 24-hour basis;
2. Be under the direction of a registered nurse who is licensed to practice in Texas; and
3. Include a licensed vocational nurse or registered nurse.
§748.575. **In what circumstances may a physician or registered nurse (including an advanced practice registered nurse) delegate nursing tasks to unlicensed caregivers?**

**Subchapter E, Personnel**  
**Division 3, Professional Level Service Providers**  
**January 2007**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>The physician or registered nurse may delegate nursing tasks to unlicensed caregivers only if all delegation criteria are met for the task to be delegated, including, but not limited to:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(1) Compliance with 22 TAC, Chapters 224 and 225 of the Texas Board of Nurse Examiners rules;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(2) The nursing task is one that a reasonable and prudent physician or registered nurse would find is within the scope of sound nursing judgment to delegate;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(3) The physician or registered nurse determines that the nursing task can be properly and safely performed by the unlicensed caregiver without jeopardizing the child’s welfare;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(4) The operation employing or contracting with the unlicensed caregivers develops and follows a protocol, with input from a physician or registered nurse, for the instruction and training of unlicensed caregivers performing nursing tasks. The protocol must address:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(A) An established mechanism for identifying those individuals to whom nursing tasks may be designated;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(B) The manner in which the instruction addresses the complexity of the delegated task;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(C) The manner in which the unlicensed caregivers demonstrate the competency of the delegated task; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(D) The mechanism for re-evaluation of the competency;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(5) The training protocol recognizes that the final decision as to what nursing tasks can be safely delegated in any specific situation is within the specific scope of the physician’s or registered nurse’s judgment; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(6) A physician or registered nurse must instruct unlicensed caregivers in performing nursing tasks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Division 4, Treatment Director

§748.601. Must I have a treatment director?  
You must have a treatment director if you provide treatment services to 25 or more children, or to more than 30% of the children in your care. Your treatment director must be a full-time employee of your operation.

§748.603. What are the responsibilities of a treatment director?  
(a) The treatment director:

(1) Is responsible for the overall treatment program, including clinical responsibility for the management of your operation’s therapeutic interventions; and

(2) Provides direction and overall management of your treatment program.

(b) When assigning responsibilities to your treatment director, you must ensure that the treatment director can oversee the treatment of all children receiving treatment services.

§748.605. What qualifications must a treatment director have?  
(a) A treatment director that provides or oversees treatment services for children with mental retardation or children with pervasive developmental disorders must be:

(1) Licensed as a psychiatrist, psychologist, professional counselor, clinical social worker, marriage and family therapist, or registered nurse; or

(2) Certified by the Texas Education Agency as an education diagnostician, have a master’s degree in special education or a human services field, and have three years of experience working with children with mental retardation or a pervasive developmental disorder.

(b) A treatment director that provides or oversees treatment services for children with primary medical needs must be a physician or a licensed registered nurse.

(continued)
Medium

(c) A treatment director that provides or oversees treatment services for children with emotional disorders must:

(1) Be a psychiatrist or psychologist;

(2) Have a master’s degree in a human services field from an accredited college or university and three years of experience providing treatment services for children with an emotional disorder, including one year in a residential setting; or

(3) Be a licensed master social worker, a licensed clinical social worker, a licensed professional counselor, or a licensed marriage and family therapist, and have three years of experience providing treatment services for children with an emotional disorder, including one year in a residential setting.

§748.607. If I provide more than one type of treatment service, can I have one treatment director?

Yes, you can have one treatment director if he meets the required qualifications for the most prevalent treatment services your operation offers.

Helpful Information

If you provide multiple treatment services, you may want to consider hiring more than one treatment director. Otherwise, your treatment director must either meet minimum qualifications for all treatment services that you provide or must meet minimum qualifications for your most prevalent treatment service. If there is no clear prevalence, you will need to base the qualifications for this position on the treatment service that your operation intends or predicts to be the most prevalent (and manage your admissions accordingly), or manage your admissions based on the qualifications of your treatment director.
Division 5, Caregivers

§748.681. What minimum qualifications must a caregiver meet?  

Each employee must meet the following qualifications before you can count him in the child/caregiver ratio:

1. Be at least:
   - (A) 18 years old if all the children in the group the caregiver serves are under 13 years old; or
   - (B) 21 years old if at least one child in the group the caregiver serves is 13 years old or older;

2. Have one of the following from a program recognized by the Texas Education Agency (TEA) or a public educational entity outside of Texas:
   - (A) High school diploma; or
   - (B) High school equivalency, such as a General Educational Development (GED); and

3. Be able to read, write, and communicate with co-workers, medical personnel, and other persons necessary to care for the child's needs.

§748.683. What are the general requirements for supervising caregivers?

You must provide oversight of caregivers, including volunteers to:

1. Protect children’s health, safety, and well-being; and
2. Ensure that assigned duties are performed adequately.
§748.685. What responsibilities does a caregiver have when supervising a child or children?

(a) The caregiver is responsible for:

- **Medium** (1) Knowing which children they are responsible for;
- **Medium** (2) Child care services for each assigned child;
- **High** (3) Being aware of and accountable for each child’s on-going activity;
- **High** (4) Providing the level of supervision necessary to ensure each child’s safety and well being, including auditory and/or visual awareness of each child’s on-going activity as appropriate; and
- **High** (5) Being able to intervene when necessary to ensure each child’s safety.

(b) In deciding how closely to supervise a child, the caregiver must take into account:

- **Medium-High** (1) The child’s age;
- **Medium-High** (2) The child’s individual differences and abilities;
- **Medium-High** (3) The indoor and outdoor layout of the operation;
- **Medium-High** (4) Surrounding circumstances, hazards, and risks; and
- **Medium-High** (5) The child’s physical, mental, emotional, and social needs.

(c) Caregivers must:

- **Medium-High** (1) Be aware of the children’s habits, interests, and any special needs;
- **High** (2) Provide a safe environment;
- **Medium** (3) Cultivate developmentally appropriate independence in children through planned but flexible program activities;
- **Medium** (4) Positively reinforce children’s efforts and accomplishments;
- **Medium-High** (5) Ensure continuity of care for children by sharing with incoming caregivers information about each child’s activities during the previous shift and any verbal or written information or instructions given by the parent or other professionals; and
- **Medium** (6) Implement and follow the children’s service plans.

(continued)
(d) A child may be away from the operation and caregivers in order to participate in an unsupervised activity, as appropriate based on the caregiver’s assessment of the child and the supervision instructions in the child’s service plan. The caregiver’s assessment of the child must include the factors outlined in subsection (b) of this section. The child’s service plan must specify if unsupervised activities are allowed, and under what circumstances. The unsupervised activity may extend into sleeping hours. If a child is participating in an unsupervised activity, the caregiver must:

1. Know where the child will be;
2. Give the child a specific time to return to the operation or the caregiver’s location;
3. Give the child a way to contact the caregiver in an emergency; and
4. Be available to respond if the child contacts the caregiver and needs immediate assistance.

(e) Caregivers that supervise a child receiving treatment services for an emotional disorder must maintain daily progress notes for the child. Caregivers must sign and date each progress note at the time the progress note is completed.

(f) If a child or children are allowed overnight visits with staff, the child(ren) must be properly fed, lodged, and supervised, and their health, safety, and well-being protected. The person(s) responsible for the child(ren) must be given information about obtaining emergency medical care.

**Helpful Information**

*Regarding subsection (d), children may also be away from the operation and caregivers in order to participate in an activity supervised by adults not affiliated with the operation, such as an event sponsored by a religious youth group, Boy Scout or similar event, school-sponsored social event (like a dance), etc. The same expectations outlined in subsection (d) of this rule apply to these types of activities.*
Division 6, Contract Staff and Volunteers

§748.721. What are the requirements for a volunteer?

(a) You must maintain a personnel record for each volunteer.

(b) The personnel record must include a statement signed and dated by the volunteer indicating he must immediately report any suspected incident of abuse, neglect, or exploitation to the Child Abuse Hotline and the operation’s administrator or administrator’s designee. An internal reporting policy may not require the delegation of the person’s responsibility to report suspected abuse, neglect, or exploitation.

(c) If the volunteer provides short-term services through an agency or an organization, you must determine that the organization or agency’s policies meet the intent of these rules before the volunteer can have contact with children.

§748.723. Are there additional requirements for a volunteer or contractor that performs employee functions?

(a) A volunteer or contractor that performs any employee function must meet the same requirements as an employee who performs that function.

(b) You must maintain records documenting how these requirements are met.

§748.725. Is a family or organization that invites a child in care for an overnight or weekend a “volunteer”?

(a) When a family or organization takes a child who is in care for an overnight or weekend visit, this is not a volunteer activity.

(b) In order for a family or organization to take a child out of care for more than 48 hours, you must get written approval from the parent.
§748.727. Is a “sponsoring family” program a volunteer program?  

Subchapter E, Personnel  
Division 6, Contract Staff and Volunteers  
January 2007

A sponsoring family program is not considered a volunteer program; however, in order for a sponsoring family to keep the child who is in your care for more than 48 hours, you must get written approval from the parent. You may obtain approval at the time of the child’s admission.

§748.729. What must I do when a child in care visits a volunteer or sponsoring family for a day or overnight?

Subchapter E, Personnel  
Division 6, Contract Staff and Volunteers  
January 2007

(a) If a child has a day or overnight visit with a volunteer or sponsoring family, you must ensure that:

1. The child is properly supervised, properly fed and hydrated, and provided with safe housing accommodations, if applicable.
2. The child’s health, safety, and well-being are protected.
3. Prior to the visit, the person responsible for the child during the visit has information for emergency medical care, such as permission for emergency medical care, telephone numbers for the child’s licensed physician(s), and medication and treatment information.
4. Unless the volunteer is court-appointed, the volunteer must not remove the child from the operation for more than 48 hours without prior written approval of the child’s parent.

(b) When a child who is not in your care invites a child who is in your care for an overnight or weekend visit, this is not a volunteer activity. You must get prior written approval from the parent to continue a visit for more than 48 hours.

§748.731. Can I use a volunteer that is on probation, parole, or referred for community service through the courts?

Subchapter E, Personnel  
Division 6, Contract Staff and Volunteers  
January 2007

No, a person that is not being compensated may not provide services to an operation, if that person is on probation or parole, or is referred for community services through the courts because of criminal activity, including as an alternative to incarceration. This prohibition applies even if the services do not involve contact with children in care.
Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development

Division 1, Definitions

§748.801. What do certain words mean in this subchapter?

These words have the following meanings in this subchapter:

(1) CEU – Continuing education unit.
(2) CPR – Cardiopulmonary resuscitation.
(3) Hours – Clock hours.
(4) Instructor led training – Training that is characterized by the communication and interaction that takes place between the student and the instructor and must include an opportunity for the student to timely interact with the instructor to obtain clarifications and information beyond the scope of the training materials, including answering questions, providing feedback on skills practice, providing guidance or information on additional resources, and proactively interacting with students. Examples of this type of training include classroom training, on-line distance learning, video-conferencing, or other group learning experiences.
(5) Self instructional training – Training that is designed to be used by one individual working alone at his own pace to complete lessons or modules. Examples of this type of training include computer based training, written materials, or video training.

Division 2, Orientation

§748.831. What is the orientation requirement for employees?

(a) Prior to beginning job duties or having contact with children in care, each employee must have orientation that includes:

Medium

(1) An overview of the relevant and applicable rules of this chapter;
(2) Your philosophy, organizational structure, policies, and a description of the services and programs you offer; and
(3) The needs and characteristics of children that you serve.

(b) You must document the completion of the orientation in the appropriate personnel record.
§748.833. Must I provide orientation to an employee who has previously worked as an employee?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 2, Orientation
January 2007

(a) You do not have to provide orientation to an employee who has worked as an employee at your operation during the past 12 months. However, if you assign this employee to be the only caregiver for a group of children, then before you may assign the employee you must:

Medium

(1) Discuss with the employee any changes in your services or programs that have occurred since the previous employment; and

Medium

(2) Ensure the employee has received training during the past 12 months from your operation on preventing, identifying, treating, and reporting child abuse, neglect, and exploitation.

Medium-Low

(b) You must document this discussion and previous training in the caregiver’s personnel record.

Division 3, Pre-Service Experience and Training

§748.861. What are the pre-service experience requirements for a caregiver?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 3, Pre-Service Experience and Training
January 2007

(no weight)

(a) If less than 25 children and less than 30% of your total population of children in care are receiving treatment services, then there are no pre-service experience requirements.

Medium

(b) If 25 or more children or 30% or more of your total population of children in care are receiving treatment services, then a caregiver must have 40 hours of supervised child-care experience in an operation that provides the same treatment services. If the 40-hour experience requirement is not met, before you may assign the person as the only caregiver responsible for a group of children, the caregiver must have at least 40 total hours of supervised child-care experience from your operation and/or another operation that provides the same treatment services. Until the caregiver completes the supervised experience, an experienced caregiver must be physically available to supervise the caregiver at all times. The supervised child-care experience must be documented in the appropriate personnel record.
§748.863. What are the pre-service hourly training requirements for caregivers and employees?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 3, Pre-Service Experience and Training
September 2010

(a) Caregivers and certain employees must complete the following training hours before the noted time frame:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>Who is required to receive the training?</th>
<th>What type of pre-service training?</th>
<th>How many hours of training are needed?</th>
<th>When must the training be completed?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(1) All caregivers</td>
<td>General pre-service training</td>
<td>8 hours</td>
<td>Before the person can be the only caregiver responsible for a child in care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium-High</td>
<td>(2) Caregivers caring for children receiving only child care services or programmatic services</td>
<td>Pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention</td>
<td>8 hours</td>
<td>At least 4 hours of training before the person can be the only caregiver responsible for a child in care, and all 8 hours of training within 90 days of being responsible for a child in care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium-High</td>
<td>(3) Caregivers caring for children receiving treatment services, except for those exclusively caring for children receiving treatment services for primary medical needs</td>
<td>Pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention</td>
<td>16 hours, however, if your operation prohibits the use of emergency behavior intervention, then only 8 hours of training are needed</td>
<td>At least half of the required hours of training before the person can be the only caregiver responsible for a child in care, and all of the required hours of training within 90 days of being responsible for a child in care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(4) Child care administrators, professional level service providers, treatment directors, and case managers except those exclusively assigned to children receiving treatment services for primary medical needs</td>
<td>Pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention</td>
<td>8 hours</td>
<td>All 8 hours of training within 90 days of beginning job duties</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) You must document the completion of each training requirement in the appropriate personnel record.
Helpful Information

A person may not administer any form of emergency behavior intervention until his pre-service training is complete, except the short personal restraint of a child. §748.2453 requires that only a caregiver qualified in emergency behavior intervention administer emergency behavior interventions, except short personal restraint. A person is not considered qualified until/unless his training is complete.

§748.865. Can time spent in orientation training count towards pre-service training?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 3, Pre-Service Experience and Training
January 2007

Medium-Low

No, the orientation training must be separate from the pre-service training requirement.

Helpful Information

Orientation is focused on providing new employees with information about your organization and how it operates. Pre-service training is focused on preparing new employees to do their job competently. This is the reason that these requirements are separate in the minimum standards and that orientation may not be counted toward pre-service or annual training requirements.

§748.867. Must I provide pre-service training to a caregiver or an employee who has previously worked in an operation?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 3, Pre-Service Experience and Training
January 2007

(no weight)

(a) A caregiver is exempt from completing the eight hours of general pre-service training if he has been employed as a caregiver in a general residential operation or residential treatment center during the past 12 months.

(no weight)

(b) A caregiver or an employee working with children does not have to complete the pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention if he:

(1) Has been employed in a general residential operation or residential treatment center during the past 12 months;

(2) Has received training during the past 12 months in the types of emergency behavior intervention used at your operation; and

(3) Can demonstrate knowledge and competency of the training material both in writing and in physical techniques.

Medium-Low

(c) You must document the exemption factors in the appropriate personnel record.
§748.869. What are the instructor requirements for providing pre-service training?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 3, Pre-Service Experience and Training
January 2007

Medium (a) A qualified instructor must deliver the pre-service training.
Medium (b) The training must be instructor led.
Medium-High (c) A health-care professional or a pharmacist must provide training in administering psychotropic medication. The trainer must assess each participant after the training to ensure that the participant has learned the course content.
(c) To provide training in emergency behavior intervention the:
Medium-High (1) Instructor must be certified in a recognized method of emergency behavior intervention, or be able to document knowledge of:
Medium-High (A) The emergency behavior intervention;
Medium-High (B) The course material;
Medium-High (C) Training delivery methods and techniques; and
Medium-High (D) Training evaluation or assessment methods and techniques; and
Medium-High (2) Training must be competency-based and require participants to demonstrate skill and competency at the end of the training.

Division 4, General Pre-Service Training

§748.881. What curriculum components must be included in the general pre-service training?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 4, General Pre-Service Training
January 2007

The general pre-service training curriculum must include the following components:

Medium (1) Topics appropriate to the needs of children for whom the caregiver will be providing care, such as developmental stages of children, fostering children’s self-esteem, constructive guidance and discipline of children, strategies and techniques for monitoring and working with these children, and age-appropriate activities for the children;
Medium-High (2) Measures to prevent, identify, treat, and report suspected occurrences of child abuse (including sexual abuse), neglect, and exploitation;
Medium-High (3) Procedures to follow in emergencies, such as weather-related emergencies, volatile persons, and severe injury or illness of a child or adult;
Medium-High (4) Preventing the spread of communicable diseases; and
Medium-High (5) The location and use of fire extinguishers and first-aid equipment.
§748.883. If your operation cares for children younger than two years old, what additional curriculum components must be included in the general pre-service training?

If your operation cares for children younger than two years old, the general pre-service training curriculum must also include the following components:

Medium-High (1) Recognizing and preventing shaken baby syndrome;
Medium-High (2) Preventing sudden infant death syndrome; and
Medium (3) Understanding early childhood brain development.

§748.885. For caregivers that administer psychotropic medication, what additional curriculum components must be included in the general pre-service training?

Before a caregiver is permitted to administer psychotropic medication, the caregiver must be trained on administering the medication. The training curriculum must include the following components:

Medium-High (1) Identification of psychotropic medications;
Medium-High (2) Basic pharmacology (the actions and side effects of, and possible adverse reactions to, various psychotropic medications);
Medium-High (3) Techniques and methods of administering medications;
Medium (4) Who is legally authorized to provide consent for the psychotropic medication; and
Medium (5) Any related policies and procedures.
Division 5, Pre-Service Training Regarding Emergency Behavior Intervention

§748.901. If I do not allow the use of emergency behavior intervention, what curriculum components must be included in the pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 5, Pre-Service Training Regarding Emergency Behavior Intervention
January 2007

Medium If you do not allow the use of emergency behavior intervention, your pre-service training curriculum regarding emergency behavior intervention must focus on early identification of potential problem behaviors and strategies and techniques of less restrictive interventions, including the following components:

Medium (1) Developing and maintaining an environment that supports positive and constructive behaviors;

Medium (2) The causes of behaviors potentially harmful to children, including aspects of the environment;

Medium-High (3) Early signs of behaviors that may become dangerous to the child or others;

Medium-High (4) Strategies and techniques the child can use to avoid harmful behaviors;

Medium-High (5) Teaching children to use the strategies and techniques of your operation’s de-escalation protocols to avoid harmful behavior, and supporting the children’s efforts to progress into a state of self-control;

Medium-High (6) Less restrictive strategies caregivers can use to intervene in potentially harmful behaviors;

Medium (7) Less restrictive strategies caregivers can use to work with oppositional children; and

Medium-High (8) The risks associated with the use of prone or supine restraints, including positional, compression, or restraint asphyxia.

§748.903. If I allow the use of emergency behavior intervention, what curriculum components must be included in the pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 5, Pre-Service Training Regarding Emergency Behavior Intervention
September 2010

Medium-High (a) If you allow the use of emergency behavior intervention, at least 75% of the required hours of pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention must focus on early identification of potential problem behaviors and strategies and techniques of less restrictive interventions, including the components listed in §748.901 of this title (relating to If I do not allow the use of emergency behavior intervention, what curriculum components must be included in the pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention?).

(continued)
(b) The training does not have to address the use of any emergency behavior intervention that your policies do not allow.

(c) The other 25% of the pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention must include the following components:

| Medium-High | (1) Different roles and responsibilities of caregivers qualified in emergency behavior intervention versus employees or volunteers who are not qualified in emergency behavior intervention; |
| Medium-High | (2) Escape and evasion techniques to prevent harm to the child and caregiver without requiring the use of an emergency behavior intervention; |
| Medium-High | (3) Safe implementation of the restraints and/or seclusion techniques and procedures that are appropriate for the age and weight of children served and permitted by the rules in this chapter and your policies and procedures; |
| Medium-High | (4) The physiological impact of emergency behavior intervention; |
| Medium-High | (5) The psychological impact of emergency behavior intervention, such as flashbacks from prior abuse; |
| Medium-High | (6) How to adequately monitor the child during the administration of an emergency behavior intervention to prevent injury or death; |
| Medium-High | (7) Monitoring physical signs of distress and obtaining medical assistance; |
| Medium-High | (8) Health risks for children associated with the use of specific techniques and procedures; |
| Medium-High | (9) Drawings, photographs, or videos of each personal or mechanical restraint permitted by your policy. For mechanical restraints, this must include the manufacturer’s complete specifications for each device permitted, an explanation of modifications to the manufacturer’s specifications, and a copy of the approval of the modification from a licensed psychiatrist; and |
| Medium | (10) Strategies for re-integration of children into the environment after the use of emergency behavior intervention, including the debriefing of caregivers and the child. |
Division 6, Annual Training

§748.931. What are the annual training requirements for caregivers and employees?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 6, Annual Training
September 2010

(a) Caregivers and certain employees must complete the following training hours:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Who is required to receive the annual training?</th>
<th>How many hours of annual training are needed?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| (1) Caregivers where an operation has less than 25 children in care that are receiving treatment services and less than 30% of their total population of children in care are receiving treatment services | (A) 20 hours.  
(B) Of the 20 hours, every six months a caregiver must complete at least four hours of training specifically related to the emergency behavior intervention techniques that you allow. The caregiver must have this training within 180 days from the date that he last received such training.  
(C) The 20 hours must include two hours of transportation safety training if the caregiver transports a child in care whose chronological or developmental age is younger than nine years old. |
| (2) Caregivers where an operation has 25 or more children in care that are receiving treatment services or 30% or more of their total population of children in care are receiving treatment services | (A) 50 hours.  
(B) Of the 50 hours, every six months a caregiver must complete at least four hours of training specifically related to the emergency behavior intervention techniques that you allow. The caregiver must have this training within 180 days from the date that he last received such training.  
(C) The 50 hours must include two hours of transportation safety training if the caregiver transports a child in care whose chronological or developmental age is younger than nine years old. |
| (3) Caregivers in a cottage home | (A) 20 hours.  
(B) Of the 20 hours, a caregiver must complete at least four hours of training annually specifically related to the emergency behavior intervention techniques that you allow. The caregiver must have this training within 12 months from the date that he last received such training.  
(C) The 20 hours must include two hours of transportation safety training if the caregiver transports a child in care whose chronological or developmental age is younger than nine years old. |

(continued)
Who is required to receive the annual training? | How many hours of annual training are needed?  
---|---
(4) Child-care administrators, professional level service providers, treatment directors, and case managers who hold a relevant professional license | (A) 15 hours, however, annual training hours used to maintain a person’s relevant professional license may be used to complete these hours. The 15 hours must include two hours of transportation safety training if the person transports a child in care whose chronological or developmental age is younger than nine years old.  
(B) There are no annual training requirements for emergency behavior intervention. However, if there is a substantial change in techniques, types of intervention, or operation policies regarding emergency behavior intervention, then the staff must be re-trained in emergency behavior intervention.  
(no weight)

(5) Child-care administrators, professional level service providers, treatment directors, and case managers who do not hold a relevant professional license | (A) 20 hours, which must include two hours of transportation safety training if the person transports a child in care whose chronological or developmental age is younger than nine years old.  
(B) There are no annual training requirements for emergency behavior intervention. However, if there is a substantial change in techniques, types of intervention, or operation policies regarding emergency behavior intervention, then the staff must be re-trained in emergency behavior intervention.  
(no weight)

(b) Caregivers exclusively caring for children receiving treatment services for primary medical needs are exempt from emergency behavior intervention training requirements.

§748.935. When must a person complete the annual training?  
Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development  
Division 6, Annual Training  
September 2010

(a) Each person must complete the annual training:  
Medium  
(1) Within 12 months from the date of his employment; and  
Medium  
(2) During each subsequent 12-month period.  
(no weight)  
(b) Alternately, you have the option of prorating the person’s annual training requirements from the date of employment to the end of the calendar year or the end of the operation’s fiscal year and then beginning a new 12-month period that coincides with the calendar or fiscal year.  
Medium-Low  
(c) The method for completing annual training requirements must be consistent throughout your operation.
§748.937. What types of hours or instruction can be used to complete the annual training requirements?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 6, Annual Training
September 2010

(a) If the training complies with the other rules in this division (relating to Annual Training), annual training may include hours or CEUs earned through:

(1) Workshops or courses offered by local school districts, colleges or universities, or Licensing;

(2) Conferences or seminars;

(3) Self-instructional training, excluding training on emergency behavior intervention, first-aid, and CPR;

(4) Planned learning opportunities provided by child-care associations or Licensing;

(5) Planned learning opportunities provided by a professional contract service provider, child-care administrator, professional level service provider, treatment director, or caregiver who meets minimum qualifications in the rules of this chapter; or

(6) Completed college courses for which a passing grade is earned, with three college credit hours being equivalent to 50 clock hours of required training. College courses do not substitute for required CPR or first-aid certification or required annual training on emergency behavior intervention or psychotropic medication.

(b) For annual training hours, you may count:

(1) The hours of annual training that a person received at another general residential operation or residential treatment center, if the person:

(A) Received the training within the time period you are using to calculate the person’s annual training; and

(B) Provides documentation of the training;

(2) Annual emergency behavior intervention training;

(3) First-aid and CPR training;

(4) The hours of pre-service training that the person earns in addition to the required pre-service hours. For example, if a person completes 24 hours of pre-service emergency behavior intervention training, and is required to obtain 16 hours, that person may count eight of the hours toward annual training requirements;

(5) Half of the hours spent developing initial training curriculum that is relevant to the population of children served. No additional credit hours for training curriculum development are permitted for repeated training sessions; and

(6) One-fourth of the hours spent updating and making revisions to training curriculum that is relevant to the population of children served.

(continued)
(c) For annual training hours, you may not count:

Medium-Low
(1) Orientation training;

Medium-Low
(2) Pre-service training;

Medium-Low
(3) The hours involved in case staffings and conferences with the supervisor; or

Medium-Low
(4) The hours presenting training to others.

Medium-Low
(d) No more than one-third of the required annual training hours may come from self-instructional training.

Medium-Low
(e) If a person earns more than the minimum number of training hours required during a particular year, the person can carry over to the next year a maximum of 10 training hours.

§748.939. Does Licensing approve training resources or trainers for annual training hours?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 6, Annual Training
January 2007

Medium
No. We do not approve or endorse training resources or trainers for training hours. You must, however, ensure the employees receive reliable training relevant to the population of children served, which includes:

Medium-Low
(1) Specifically stated learning objectives;

Medium-Low
(2) A curriculum, which includes experiential or applied activities;

Medium
(3) An evaluation/assessment tool to determine whether the person has obtained the information necessary to meet the stated objectives; and

Medium-Low
(4) A certificate, letter, or a signed and dated statement of successful completion from the training source.
§748.941. What are the instructor requirements for providing annual training?

(a) Except for transportation safety training, the annual training instructors must meet the same requirements in §748.869(a), (c) and (d) of this title (relating to What are the instructor requirements for providing pre-service training?).

(b) Transportation safety training must be provided by:

(1) A training provider registered with the Texas Early Care and Education Career Development System’s Texas Trainer Registry, maintained by the Texas Head Start State Collaboration Office;

(2) An instructor who teaches early childhood development or another relevant course at a secondary school or institution of higher education accredited by a recognized accrediting agency;

(3) An employee of a state agency with relevant expertise;

(4) A physician, psychologist, licensed professional counselor, social worker, or registered nurse;

(5) A person who holds a generally recognized credential or possesses documented knowledge relevant to the training the person will provide; or

(6) A person who has at least two years of experience working in child development, a child development program, early childhood education, a childhood education program, or a Head Start or Early Head Start program and:

(A) Has been awarded a Child Development Associate credential; or
(B) Holds at least an associate’s degree in child development, early childhood education, or a related field.
§748.943. What areas or topics are appropriate for annual training?

Annual training must be in areas appropriate to the needs of children for whom the operation or employee will be providing care, which may include:

1. Developmental stages of children;
2. Constructive guidance and discipline of children;
3. Fostering children’s self-esteem;
4. Positive interaction with children;
5. Strategies and techniques for working with the population of children served;
6. Supervision and safety practices in the care of children; or
7. Preventing the spread of communicable diseases.

**Best Practice Suggestion**

Here are some examples of annual training topics:

- Helping children cope with separation, such as from parents, family, and placement;
- Helping or preparing children for re-integration into a family, community, or subsequent placement;
- Stages of child development, including normal behavioral reactions to stress at the various ages of children served by the program;
- Healthy personal boundaries and professional relationship boundaries;
- Protecting self and others from false allegations;
- Training to perform special tasks such as the care of gastric tubes or lifeguard certification training, if applicable;
- For a caregiver who provides care to children receiving treatment services for emotional disorders, training on cognitive distortions and how they apply to the children; or
- Special needs of children in care, which may include areas such as sexualized behavior, trauma, medical needs, and/or developmental disorders.
§748.945. For caregivers that administer psychotropic medication, what annual training is required?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 6, Annual Training
September 2010

If you permit a caregiver to administer psychotropic medication:

Medium
(1) His annual training must meet the requirements in §748.885 of this title (relating to For caregivers that administer psychotropic medication, what additional curriculum components must be included in the general pre-service training?); and

Medium-Low
(2) He must obtain annual psychotropic medication training no later than 12 months after his last psychotropic medication training.

§748.947. What must annual training regarding emergency behavior intervention include?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 6, Annual Training
January 2007

Medium-High
(a) The annual training regarding emergency behavior intervention must reinforce basic principles covered in pre-service training, see §748.901 of this title (relating to If I do not allow the use of emergency behavior intervention, what curriculum components must be included in the pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention?) and §748.903 of this title (relating to If I allow the use of emergency behavior intervention, what curriculum components must be included in the pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention?), and develop and refine the employee’s skills.

(no weight)
(b) You may determine the content of the training based on your evaluation of your emergency behavior interventions.

(no weight)
(c) The training may repeat pre-service training components, including training in the proper use and implementation of emergency behavior intervention.

Best Practice Suggestion

Annual emergency behavior intervention training is not intended to be an exact replica of pre-service emergency behavior intervention training. While some review of previous content may be needed to ensure that caregivers retain necessary skills, you are expected and encouraged to use your emergency behavior intervention data to craft annual training that can most effectively improve the use of de-escalation techniques and emergency behavior interventions at your operation. This may include techniques caregivers can use to proactively avoid crisis situations.
§748.949. What documentation must I maintain for annual training?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 6, Annual Training
September 2010

(a) You must keep documentation verifying completion of annual training in the appropriate personnel record. The documentation may be a certificate, letter, or a signed and dated statement of successful completion from the training source. The documentation may also be a transcript from an accredited college or university.

(b) The documentation for training other than college courses must include the following information:

(1) The participant's name;
(2) Date of the training;
(3) Title or subject of the training;
(4) The trainer’s name and qualifications, or the source of the training for self-instructional training; and
(5) Length of the training in hours.

Division 7, First-Aid and CPR Certification

§748.981. Who must have first-aid and CPR certification?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 7, First-Aid and CPR Certification
September 2010

(a) Each caregiver must:

(1) Have a current certification in first-aid; and
(2) Be able to immediately respond to emergencies.

(b) At all times, at least one caregiver counted in child/caregiver ratio must:

(1) Have current certification in CPR appropriate for the children that you serve; and
(2) Be able to immediately respond to emergencies.

(c) Any new caregiver not currently certified in first-aid must be trained and certified within 90 days of employment.
§748.983. When must a caregiver renew first-aid and CPR certification?

(a) Each caregiver must complete any new first-aid training as required to maintain a current certification.

(b) The caregiver in the child/caregiver ratio who must have a current certification in CPR must also complete any new CPR training as required to maintain a current certification.

§748.985. Who can provide first-aid and CPR certification?

(a) The following may provide first-aid and CPR certification:

(1) The American Red Cross, American Heart Association, or a training program that has been approved by the local Emergency Medical Services Authority, or is offered through a local hospital; or

(2) A person with a current certification to provide the training.

(b) A caregiver may not obtain first-aid or CPR certification through self-instructional training.

§748.987. What must the first-aid and CPR training include?

(a) First-aid and CPR training and re-certification must consist of a curriculum that includes both written and hands-on skill-based instruction, practice (for CPR, the practice is through the use of a CPR mannequin), and testing.

(b) CPR training and recertification must include CPR for children and adults. For operations that care for infants and/or admit children with infants, the training must also include CPR for infants.
§748.989. What documentation must I maintain for first-aid and CPR certification?

Subchapter F, Training and Professional Development
Division 7, First-Aid and CPR Certification
January 2007

(a) You must document the completion of each training requirement in the appropriate personnel records. The documentation may be a certificate, letter, or a statement of successful completion, that is signed and dated, from the training source. A photocopy of the original first-aid and/or CPR certificate or letter may be maintained in the personnel record, as long as the employee can provide an original document upon request by Licensing.

(b) The documentation must include the following information:

(1) The participant’s name;
(2) Date of the training;
(3) Title or subject of the training;
(4) The trainer’s name and qualifications;
(5) The expiration date of the certification as determined by the organization providing the certification; and
(6) Length of the training in hours.
Subchapter G, Child/Caregiver Ratios

§748.1001. What is the child/caregiver ratio?

The child/caregiver ratio is the maximum number of children for whom one caregiver can be responsible.

§748.1003. For purposes of the child/caregiver ratio, how many children can a single caregiver care for during the children’s waking hours?

(a) The number of children that a single caregiver may care for during waking hours depends on the ages and treatment service needs of the children in the group. A single caregiver may care for five children if at least one child in the group requires treatment services, or eight children if none of the children in the group require treatment services. Children younger than five years old count as two children.

(b) You may separate children into groups based on age and/or treatment services in order to vary the child/caregiver ratio required for each group, as long as:
   (1) The groups remain easily distinguishable and separated, such as by cottage or unit; and
   (2) The child/caregiver ratio is re-calculated any time groups intermingle, such as on a field trip or in the dining room.

(c) A cottage home may be out of ratio during waking hours for short periods to enable a normal home-like routine as long as the care and supervision needs of the children continue to be met. Staff or other caregivers must be on the premises and available to respond in an emergency. These additional staff or caregivers must be specifically addressed in the written professional staffing plan.

(d) A child may be away from the operation and caregivers in order to participate in an approved unsupervised activity as outlined in §748.685(d) of this title (relating to What responsibilities does a caregiver have when supervising a child or children?). A child does not count in the child/caregiver ratio while participating in an approved unsupervised activity.

Helpful Information

Examples of how to calculate ratio:
Children in the group are 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 11 years old. None of the children require treatment services, so the ratio is 1:8. Even though the 4-year-old counts as two children, only one staff person is needed.

(continued)
Helpful Information (continued)

If you added another 4-year-old to this group, two staff would be needed:
- 4-year-old counts as 2 children
- 4-year-old counts as 2 children
- 6-year-old counts as 1 child
- 7-year-old counts as 1 child
- 7-year-old counts as 1 child
- 9-year-old counts as 1 child
- 11-year-old counts as 1 child

This is a total of 9 children, so a second caregiver is needed to comply with the 1:8 ratio.

Children in the group are 4, 6, 7, 8, and 9 years old. One of the children requires treatment services, so the ratio is 1:5. Since the 4-year-old counts as two children, two staff are needed.

A group of children is determined largely by the layout of the building and/or campus. For example, the children in a cottage home are counted as one group. Since building structures vary greatly, each facility is assessed on a case-by-case basis.

§748.1005. Can child/caregiver ratios be averaged on an operation-wide basis?

Subchapter G, Child/Caregiver Ratios
September 2010

Each group of children must have sufficient caregivers to meet the required child/caregiver ratio for that group of children. A person may not be counted in the ratio for a group of children if he is caring for children outside the group or working in an administrative capacity.

§748.1007. For purposes of the child/caregiver ratio, how many children can a single caregiver care for when children are asleep at night?

Subchapter G, Child/Caregiver Ratios
September 2010

(a) The number of children that a single caregiver may care for during night-time sleeping hours depends on whether the caregiver stays awake or sleeps during these hours and on the ages and treatment service needs of the children in the group. Children younger than five years old count as two children.

(b) If the caregiver stays awake, the caregiver may care for:

1. 15 children if at least one child in the group requires treatment services; or
2. 24 children if none of the children in the group require treatment services.

(continued)
(c) If the caregiver sleeps, the caregiver may care for:

Medium-High
(1) 10 children if at least one child in the group requires treatment services; or

Medium-High
(2) 16 children if none of the children in the group require treatment services.

(d) You may separate children into groups based on age and/or treatment services in order to vary the child/caregiver ratio required for each group, as long as:

Medium
(1) The groups remain easily distinguishable and separated, such as by cottage or unit; and

Medium
(2) The child/caregiver ratio is re-calculated any time groups intermingle, such as on a field trip.

(e) A cottage home may be out of ratio during night-time sleeping hours for short periods to enable a normal home-like routine as long as the care and supervision needs of the children continue to be met. Staff or other caregivers must be on the premises and available to respond in an emergency. These additional staff or caregivers must be specifically addressed in the written professional staffing plan.

Helpful Information

Here is a chart depicting the night-time sleeping ratios:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supervising Staff:</th>
<th>No treatment services</th>
<th>Treatment Services</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Awake</td>
<td>1:24</td>
<td>1:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asleep</td>
<td>1:16</td>
<td>1:10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HOWEVER, remember that children younger than five years old always count as two children.

§748.1009. How many caregivers must I employ?

(a) You must employ an adequate number of qualified caregivers to meet the needs of children, taking into account each child’s age, medical, physical, and mental condition and other factors that affect the amount of supervision the child requires, including enough caregivers to meet:

High
(1) Child/caregiver ratios; and

High
(2) All of their responsibilities required in §748.685 of this title (relating to What responsibilities does a caregiver have when supervising a child or children?).

(b) If you provide treatment services, your professional staffing plan must identify your:

Medium
(1) Ability to have enough caregivers, including caregivers who are awake throughout the night to supervise children 24 hours a day, including frequent one-to-one monitoring whenever necessary to meet the needs of a particular child; and

Medium
(2) Staffing patterns, including your child/caregiver ratios, hours of coverage, and plans for providing backup caregivers in emergencies.
§748.1011. What employees can be counted as a caregiver in the child/caregiver ratio?

Medium-High

The child/caregiver ratio only includes qualified caregivers who are working directly with a child or group of children.

§748.1013. How does a caregiver care for a child needing constant supervision during sleeping hours?

High

(a) A caregiver must always be awake when caring for a child needing constant supervision, such as a medically fragile child or a child that is an immediate danger to himself or others.

Low

(b) To facilitate continuous care for a child, the caregiver may move a child to a location where the caregiver can directly and continuously supervise a child until there is no longer an immediate danger to himself or others. The caregiver must provide comfortable sleeping arrangements for the child.

§748.1015. How does the child/caregiver ratio apply if I provide care for both children in care and children of caregivers, or for both children and adult residents?

Medium-High

(a) The child/caregiver ratio applies to the children of caregivers who are present with children in care.

Medium-High

(b) For both children and adult residents, you must maintain the ratio as outlined in §748.1935 of this title (relating to How does the child/caregiver ratio apply if I provide care to both children and adults?).

§748.1017. How does the child/caregiver ratio apply to activities that occur away from my operation?

Medium-High

(a) The child/caregiver ratio applies to activities sponsored or conducted by the operation, including field trips, higher risk recreational activities, and appointments that occur away from the operation.

Medium-High

(b) You must have additional caregivers to meet the special needs of children when there are activities away from your operation, for example a non-ambulatory child.
§748.1019. What are the supervision requirements for a transitional living program?

A caregiver counted in the child/caregiver ratio who is responsible for supervising children of the same gender in a transitional living program must:

Medium (1) Reside in or within close physical proximity of the children’s living quarters;

Medium (2) Be onsite at the operation during times when children are awake, but the caregiver is not physically present with the children;

Medium-High (3) Be physically available to the children at all times;

Medium-High (4) Be capable of responding quickly in an emergency; and

Medium (5) Be capable of monitoring the comings and goings of the children in the program.

Helpful Information

In this rule, “same gender” means that the children and young adults in care are all the same gender. This language is not related to the gender of the caregiver. See §748.1023 for expectations regarding children of both genders sharing living quarters.

§748.1021. When does a child who is in a transitional living program not need supervision?

(a) You must evaluate each child in a transitional living program to determine whether the child needs supervision. The evaluation must:

Medium-Low (1) Include a written plan defining the periods of time the child may be left unsupervised;

Medium-Low (2) Include a written plan for addressing behavioral problems that a child may have while in the transitional living program; and

Medium (3) Identify how the child may contact the caregivers when caregivers are not physically present with the child, such as being available to the child by telephone or other means of contact.

(b) The child’s service planning team must approve the evaluation.

(c) You must document the evaluation of the child and the approval in the child’s record. You must review and update the evaluation during the child’s service planning meetings.

§748.1023. Is my operation permitted to have a transitional living program with living quarters, a cottage, or a house with both male and female residents?

You must not have living quarters, a cottage, or a house with both male and female residents, unless caregivers are always present when children are at the living quarters, cottage, or house of the transitional living program.
Subchapter H, Child Rights

§748.1101. What rights does a child in care have?

(a) A child’s rights are cumulative of any other rights granted by law or other Licensing rules.

(b) You must adhere to the child’s rights, including:

1. The right to appropriate care and treatment in the least restrictive setting available that can meet the child’s needs;

2. The right to be free from discrimination on the basis of gender (if your operation accepts both genders), race, religion, national origin, or sexual orientation;

3. The right to have physical, emotional, developmental, educational, social, and religious needs met;

4. The right to be free of abuse, neglect, and exploitation as defined in Texas Family Code, §261.401;

5. The right to be free from any harsh, cruel, unusual, unnecessary, demeaning, or humiliating punishment, which includes:
   (A) Shaking the child;
   (B) Subjecting the child to corporal punishment;
   (C) Threatening the child with corporal punishment;
   (D) Any unproductive work that serves no purpose except to demean the child, such as moving rocks from one pile to another or digging a hole and then filling it in;
   (E) Denying the child food, sleep, toileting facilities, mail, or family visits as punishment;
   (F) Subjecting the child to remarks that belittle or ridicule the child or the child’s family; and
   (G) Threatening the child with the loss of placement or shelter as punishment;

6. The right to discipline that is appropriate to the child’s age and developmental level;

7. The right to have restrictions or disciplinary consequences explained when the measures are imposed;

8. The right to a humane environment, including any treatment environment that provides reasonable protection from harm and appropriate privacy for personal needs;

9. The right to receive educational services appropriate to the child’s age and developmental level;

(continued)
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

(10) The right to training in personal care, hygiene, and grooming;

(11) The right to reasonable opportunities to participate in community functions, including recreational and social activities such as Little League teams, Girl Scouts and Boy Scouts, and extracurricular school activities outside of the operation, if appropriate;

(12) The right to have adequate personal clothing, which must be suitable to the child’s age and size and comparable to the clothing of other children in the community;

(13) The right to have personal possessions at the child’s placement and to acquire additional possessions within reasonable limits;

(14) The right to be provided with adequate protective clothing against natural elements such as rain, snow, wind, cold, sun, and insects;

(15) The right to maintain regular contact with family members unless the child’s best interest, appropriate professionals, or court necessitates restrictions;

(16) The right to send and receive uncensored mail, to have telephone conversations, and to have visitors, unless the child’s best interest, appropriate professionals, or court order necessitates restrictions;

(17) The right to hire independent mental health-care professionals, medical professionals, and attorneys at the child’s own expense;

(18) The right to be compensated for any work done for the operation as part of the child’s service plan or vocational training, with the exception of assigned routine duties that relate to the child’s living environment, such as cleaning his room or other chores, or work assigned as a disciplinary measure;

(19) The right to have personal earnings, allowances, possessions, and gifts as the child’s personal property;

(20) The right to be able to communicate in a language or any other means that is understandable to the child at admission or within a reasonable time after an emergency admission of a child, if applicable, such as having a plan for an interpreter, having at least one person at the operation at all times who can communicate with the child in the child’s own language, or other means to communicate with the child in the child’s own language;

(21) The right to confidential care and treatment;

(22) The right to consent in writing before performing any publicity or fund raising activity for the operation, including the use of his photograph;

(23) The right not to be required to make public statements acknowledging his gratitude to the operation;

(24) The right not to receive unnecessary or excessive medication;

(25) The right to have a comprehensive service plan that addresses the child’s needs, including transitional and discharge planning;

(continued)
(26) The right to participate in the development and review of the child’s service plan within the limits of the child’s comprehension and ability to manage the information;

(27) The right to receive emotional, mental health, or chemical dependency treatment separate from adults (other than young adults) who are receiving services;

(28) The right to receive appropriate treatment for physical problems that affect the child’s treatment or safety; and

(29) The right to report abuse, neglect, exploitation, or violation of personal rights without fear of punishment, interference, coercion, or retaliation.

**Helpful Information**

Although Child Protective Services (CPS) distributes a Bill of Rights to children in CPS conservatorship, you are still required to inform children and parents of the child rights listed in minimum standards. The CPS Bill of Rights does not include all child rights listed in minimum standards and is not intended to meet minimum standards requirements. You are still required to inform children and parents of all child rights listed in the minimum standards.

Regarding section (b)(2), the child’s right to freedom from discrimination on the basis of gender is not meant to require all operations to admit children of both genders, but to ensure equality for children in an operation that chooses to serve children of both genders. An operation may choose to serve children of only one gender. An operation that chooses to serve children of both genders must not discriminate based on gender, such as only allowing boys to participate in a ranching program or a hunting trip.

§748.1103. How must I inform a child and the child’s parents of their rights?

(a) Within seven days after you admit a child into your operation, you must review the child’s rights with the child and a child’s parent, unless the parent’s consent is not required. You must also provide the child and a child’s parent with a written copy of the child’s rights.

(b) Child rights must be written in:

(1) Simple, non-technical terms; and

(2) English, unless the person does not understand English. The child’s rights must be written in the person’s primary language, if possible.

(c) If the person you are informing has a visual or auditory impairment, you must explain the child’s rights in a manner that is understandable to the person.

(d) The person you are informing of the child’s rights must sign a statement indicating that the person has read and understands these rights. You must put the signed copy in the child’s record.
§748.1105. What provisions must I make for a child’s personal care?

You must provide the child with:

Medium-Low
(1) Reasonable opportunities to select his clothing as outlined in your policies; and

Medium-High
(2) Appropriate equipment and supplies for personal care, hygiene, and grooming.

§748.1107. What right does a child have regarding contact with his parent(s)?

(a) You must allow contact between a child and his parent(s) whose parental rights have not been terminated according to:

Medium-Low
(1) Your policies; and

Medium
(2) The provisions of a court order or any visitation agreements.

(b) You must document in the child’s record:

Medium-Low
(1) Any plans for contact between the child and a parent; and

Medium
(2) Any decision to limit contact with a parent.

(c) Before the service planning team, treatment director, or professional level service provider can temporarily restrict ongoing contacts or communication between the child and a parent, you must:

Medium-Low
(1) Explain the reasons for the restrictions to the child and the child’s parent; and

Medium-Low
(2) Document the reasons in the child’s record.

(d) Restrictions imposed by you that continue for more than 30 days must be re-evaluated monthly by a professional level service provider, who also must:

Medium-Low
(1) Explain the reasons for the continued restrictions to the child and the child’s parents; and

Medium-Low
(2) Document the reasons in the child’s record.

(e) If you limit communications or visits with a parent for practical reasons, such as geographical distance or expense, you must discuss the limits with the child and the child’s parents. You must document the limits in the child’s record.
§748.1109. What right does a child have regarding contact with siblings?  
Subchapter H, Child Rights  
September 2010

(a) A child must have a reasonable opportunity for sibling visits and contacts in an  
effort to preserve sibling relationships.

(b) You must address plans for sibling visits and contacts in the child’s record.

(c) When you restrict sibling contact, you must include justification in the service  
plan and service plan reviews and updates. If a restriction imposed by you lasts  
more than 90 days, you must document the justification for continuing the  
restriction in the child’s record at least every 90 days.

(d) If barriers to visits exist, such as unavoidable geographic distance and expense  
issues, the operation must make provisions for sibling contact through letters,  
television calls, or some other means.

§748.1111. What right to privacy does a child have in his contact with others?  
Subchapter H, Child Rights  
September 2010

(a) Except as determined by the child’s service planning team, treatment director,  
professional level service provider, or parent, you may not:

(1) Open or read the child’s incoming or outgoing mail, including electronic mail,  
unless necessary to assist the child with reading or writing; or  

(2) Listen to or screen the child’s telephone calls unless the child needs  
assistance with using the telephone.

(b) You must document in the child’s record:

(1) Any reason for restrictions on the child’s mail or telephone calls that you  
impose; and  

(2) A list of the mail or telephone calls that you restrict.

(c) You must inform the child and his parent about restrictions you place on the  
child.

(d) Restrictions imposed by you that continue for more than 30 days must be re-  
evaluated monthly by a professional level service provider, who also must:

(1) Explain the reasons for the continued restrictions to the child; and  

(2) Document the reasons in the child’s record.

Helpful Information

Minimum standards §§748.1107, 748.1109, and 748.1111 apply only to contact  
restrictions imposed by you. Limitations or restrictions on contact imposed by the  
court or by the child’s parent(s) are not subject to the explanation, documentation,  
and re-evaluation requirements in these rules. However, it is recommended that you  
retain written notice of any contact restrictions imposed by the court or parent(s), so  
that you will have documentation of who imposed the restrictions.
§748.1113. Under what circumstances may I conduct a search for prohibited items or items that endanger a child’s safety?

Subchapter H, Child Rights
September 2010

(a) A child’s possessions must be free of unreasonable searches and unreasonable removal of personal items.

(b) You may search a child, his possessions, or his room when you have reasonable suspicion:

1. Of the presence of a prohibited item or an item that endangers the child’s safety;

2. That the child made suicidal threats or threatened to hurt himself or others; or

3. That the child was involved in theft.

(c) Residential treatment centers and emergency care services programs may conduct routine searches (such as upon return from a home visit or return from school) as long as the routine searches are:

1. Justified in your policies;

2. Conducted uniformly; and

3. Do not involve the removal of clothing, other than outer clothing, such as coats, jackets, hats, gloves, shoes, or socks.

(d) Only a caregiver of the same gender as the child may conduct a search that involves the removal of clothing, other than outer clothing, such as coats, jackets, hats, gloves, shoes, or socks.

(e) If a search involves the removal of clothing (other than outer clothing), a second caregiver must witness the search.

(f) The caregiver must ensure that other children do not witness a search that involves the removal of clothing, other than outer clothing.

§748.1115. May a caregiver conduct a body cavity search of a child in care?

Subchapter H, Child Rights
January 2007

With the exception of a child’s mouth, a caregiver may not conduct a body cavity search of a child in care.
§748.1117. What must I document regarding a search?

Subchapter H, Child Rights
September 2010

Medium-Low You must document the following in the child’s record when you conduct a search under §748.1113(b) of this title (relating to Under what circumstances may I conduct a search for prohibited items or items that endanger a child’s safety?):

Medium-Low (1) The date of the search;
Medium-Low (2) The name of the child;
Low (3) Reason for the search;
Low (4) A description of what you searched;
Medium-Low (5) The clothing removed, if applicable;
Medium-Low (6) The name of the caregivers conducting the search;
Medium-Low (7) The name of the witness, if applicable;
Low (8) The results of the search; and
Medium-Low (9) The resolution of the issue with the child, including increased supervision, additional therapy, or disciplinary consequences.

§748.1119. What techniques am I prohibited from using on a child?

Subchapter H, Child Rights
January 2007

You may not use any of the following techniques on a child:

High (1) Chemical restraints. For more information on emergency behavior intervention, see Subchapter N of this chapter (relating to Emergency Behavior Intervention);
High (2) Aversive conditioning, which includes, but is not limited to, any technique designed to or likely to cause a child physical pain, the application of startling stimuli, and the release of noxious stimuli or toxic sprays, mists, or substances in proximity to the child’s face;
High (3) Pressure points;
High (4) Rebirthing therapy;
High (5) Hug and/or holding therapy; and
High (6) Tazor or stun guns.
Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge

Helpful Information

The admission information and admission assessment requirements vary based on the circumstances of the child’s admission. Here are the applicable minimum standards based on the type of admission:

1. Regular Admission:
   a. Admission information per 748.1205
   b. Admission assessment per 748.1217
      i. Subsection (b) prior to admission
      ii. Subsection (c) within 40 days

2. Emergency Admission:
   a. Admission information per 748.1271
   b. Admission assessment per 748.1217
      i. Subsection (b) within 40 days
      ii. Subsection (c) within 40 days

3. Emergency Care Services Admission:
   a. Admission information per 748.1205
   b. Admission assessment per 748.4231.

Division 1, Admission

§748.1201. May children receiving different types of service live in the same living quarters?

(a) Except as provided by subsection (c) of this section, children receiving different types of service may reside in the same living quarters as long as:

Medium (1) A professional level service provider completes an evaluation of the living quarters for each child that you place in the living quarters; and

Medium (2) In each evaluation, the professional level service provider ensures that:

Medium (A) There is no conflict of care with the best interests of any of the children placed in the living quarters;

Medium (B) Placing the child with different service or treatment needs in the living quarters will not adversely impact the other children in the living quarters;

(continued)
(C) The number of children in the living quarters is appropriate at all times based on the needs of all children in the living quarters;

(D) Caregivers can appropriately supervise all children in the living quarters at all times; and

(E) You can meet the needs of all children in the living quarters.

(b) If the treatment or service needs of any children in the living quarters changes, the professional level service provider must evaluate the needs of each child in the living quarters to ensure there is no conflict of care.

(c) Children admitted for emergency care services must receive any therapeutic services (such as group therapy or art therapy) separate from children admitted for non-emergency care and must have separate living quarters, such as a separate wing of an operation, or a separate cottage. Children admitted for emergency care services may be combined with children in non-emergency care for meals, recreation, and transportation.

**Best Practice Suggestion**

Examples of conflicts in care are placements that:

- Place one child at serious risk for harm by another child;
- Significantly compromise the care and supervision of any child in care;
- Require a level of expertise from the caregivers that they do not possess; or
- Create an environment that is appropriately restrictive for one child but inappropriate for another.

§748.1203. Who may I admit?

(a) You may only admit children or young adults who meet your admission policy guidelines and whose needs you can meet. If you adopt a change in your admission policies that requires a change in the conditions of your permit, you must request an amendment to your permit with us.

(b) Each placement must meet the child’s physical, medical, recreational, educational, and emotional needs as identified in the child’s admission assessment.
§748.1205. What information must I document in the child’s record at admission?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 1, Admission
March 2014

(a) You must include the following in the child’s record at admission:

1. The child’s name, gender, race, religion, date of birth, and birthplace;
2. Court orders establishing who is the managing conservator for the child, if applicable;
3. The name, address, and telephone number of the managing conservator, the primary caregivers for the child, any person with whom the child is allowed to leave the operation, and any other individual who has the legal authority to consent to the child’s medical care;
4. The names, addresses, and telephone numbers of biological or adoptive parents, unless parental rights have been terminated;
5. The names, addresses, and telephone numbers of siblings;
6. The date of admission;
7. Medication the child is taking;
8. The child’s immunization record;
9. Allergies, such as food, medication, sting, and skin allergies;
10. Chronic health conditions, such as asthma or diabetes;
11. Known contraindications to the use of restraint;
12. Identification of the child’s treatment needs, if applicable, and any additional treatment services or programmatic services the child is receiving;
13. Identification of the child’s high-risk behavior(s), if applicable, and the safety plan staff and caregivers will implement related to the behavior(s);
14. A copy of the placement agreement, if applicable; and
15. Documentation of the attempt to notify the parent of the child’s location as required by §748.1211(c) of this title (relating to What information must I share with the parent at the time of placement?), if applicable.

(b) If you admit a child for emergency care services, you must document the information:

1. Regarding the reason for admission in the child’s record upon admission; and
2. In subsection (a) of this section within 72 hours after you admit the child. If any information is not available within that time frame, you must document in the child’s record reasonable efforts made to obtain the information.

(c) For emergency admissions, as opposed to a child receiving emergency care services, you must meet the requirements in Division 2 of this subchapter (relating to Emergency Admission).
§748.1207. What is a placement agreement?

A placement agreement is your agreement with a child's parent that defines your roles and responsibilities and authorizes you to obtain or provide services for the child. The placement agreement must include:

1. Authorization permitting you to care for the child;
2. A medical consent form signed by a person legally authorized by the Texas Family Code to provide consent; and
3. The reason for placement and anticipated length of time in care.

§748.1209. What orientation must I provide a child?

(a) Within seven days of admission, you must provide orientation to each newly admitted child who is five years old or older. You must gear orientation to the intellectual level of the child.

(b) Orientation must include information about your policies on the following:

1. Visitation, including family visitation and overnight visitation;
2. Mail;
3. Telephone calls;
4. Gifts;
5. Personal possessions, including any limits placed on the possessions the child may or may not have;
6. Emergency behavior intervention, including your policies and practices on the use of personal restraint and the child's input on preferred de-escalation techniques that caregivers can use to assist the child in the de-escalation process;
7. Discipline;
8. The religious program and practices;
9. The educational program;
10. Trips away from the operation;
11. Program expectations and rules;
12. A general daily schedule for routine activities for children in care; and

(c) You must document in the child’s record when the orientation occurred, any items that the orientation did not include, and the reason that the orientation did not include that item.
§748.1211. What information must I share with the parent at the time of placement?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 1, Admission
March 2014

Medium  (a) The parent must be able to determine whether your program and/or practices are appropriate for the child and can meet the child’s needs.

(b) At admission, you must review and provide written materials to the parent placing the child that explain:

Medium-Low  (1) Information about the policies that you would present a child during orientation;

(2) Your policies regarding the:

Low  (A) Use of volunteers or sponsoring families;

Medium-Low  (B) Type and frequency of notifications made to parents; and

Low  (C) Involvement of the child in any publicity and/or fund raising activity for the operation; and

(3) The parent’s right to refuse to or withdraw consent for a child to participate in:

Medium-Low  (A) Research programs; and/or

Low  (B) Publicity and/or fund raising activities for the operation.

Medium-High  (c) You must attempt to notify the parent of a child you admit to a transitional living program of the child’s location if the child was admitted without the consent of the parent, as provided in Texas Family Code §32.203.

§748.1213. What information must I provide caregivers when I admit a child?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 1, Admission
January 2007

Medium  (a) By the day you admit the child for care, you must provide caregivers responsible for the child’s care with information about the child’s immediate needs such as enrolling the child in school or obtaining needed medical care or clothing.

Medium-High  (b) You must inform appropriate caregivers of any special needs, such as medical or dietary needs or conditions.
§748.1215. When must I complete the admission assessment?

You must complete a non-emergency admission assessment according to the time frames required in §748.1217 of this title (relating to What information must an admission assessment include?). For an emergency admission assessment, see §748.1269 of this title (relating to For an emergency admission, when must I complete all of the requirements of an admission assessment?).

A professional level service provider must sign and date each assessment, which must be in the child’s record.

§748.1217. What information must an admission assessment include?

An admission assessment must provide an initial evaluation of the appropriate placement for a child and ensure that you obtain the information necessary for you to facilitate service planning.

Prior to a child’s non-emergency admission, an admission assessment must be completed which includes:

1. The child’s legal status;
2. A description of the circumstances that led to the child’s referral for substitute care;
3. A description of the child’s behavior, including appropriate and maladaptive behavior, and any high-risk behavior posing a risk to self or others;
4. Any history of physical, sexual, or emotional abuse or neglect;
5. Current medical and dental status, including the available results of any medical and dental examinations;
6. Current mental health and substance abuse status, including available results of any psychological or psychiatric examination;
7. The child’s current developmental level of functioning;
8. The child’s current educational level and any school problems;
9. Any applicable requirements of §748.1219 of this title (relating to What are the additional admission requirements when I admit a child for treatment services?);
10. Documentation indicating efforts made to obtain any of the information in paragraphs (1)-(9) of this subsection, if any information is not obtainable;

(continued)
Medium-Low (11) The services you plan to provide to the child;
Medium-Low (12) Immediate goals of placement;
Low (13) The parent’s expectations for placement, duration of the placement, and family involvement;
Low (14) The child’s understanding of the placement;
Medium-Low (15) A determination of whether you can meet the immediate needs of the child; and
Medium-Low (16) A rationale for the appropriateness of the admission.

(c) Prior to completing a child’s initial service plan, the following information must be added to the admission assessment:

Low (1) The child’s social history. The history must include information about past and existing relationships with the child’s birth parents, siblings, extended family members, and other significant adults and children, and the quality of those relationships with the child;

Low (2) A description of the child’s home environment and family functioning;

Low (3) The child’s birth and neonatal history;

Medium-Low (4) The child’s developmental history;

Medium-Low (5) The child’s mental health and substance abuse history;

Low (6) The child’s school history, including the names of previous schools attended and the dates the schools were attended, grades earned, and special achievements;

Medium-Low (7) The child’s history of any other placements outside the child’s home, including the admission and discharge dates and reasons for placement;

Medium-Low (8) The child’s criminal history, if applicable;

Medium-Low (9) The child’s skills and special interests;

Low (10) Documentation indicating efforts made to obtain any of the information in paragraphs (1)-(9) of this subsection, if any information is not obtainable;

Medium-Low (11) The services you plan to provide to the child, including long-range goals of placement;

Medium-Low (12) Recommendations for any further assessments and testing;

Medium (13) A recommended behavior management plan;

Medium-Low (14) A determination of whether you can meet the needs of the child, based on an evaluation of the child’s special strengths and needs; and

Medium-Low (15) A rationale for the appropriateness of the admission.

(continued)
(d) You must attempt to obtain a signed authorization, so you can subsequently request in writing materials from the child’s current or most recent placement, such as the admission assessment, professional assessments, and the discharge summary. You must consider information from these materials when you complete your admission assessment if they are made available to you.

(e) This rule does not apply to children receiving emergency care services. See §748.4231 of this title (relating to What information must an admission assessment include for a child needing emergency care services, including respite child-care services?).

§748.1219. What are the additional admission requirements when I admit a child for treatment services?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 1, Admission
June 2015

When you admit a child for treatment services, you must do the following, as applicable:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If:</th>
<th>Then:</th>
<th>Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) You intend to provide treatment services for a child with an emotional disorder or pervasive development disorder</td>
<td>(A) The admission assessment must include a written, dated, and signed: (i) Psychiatric evaluation or psychological evaluation including the child’s diagnosis; or (ii) Psychosocial assessment as defined in §748.43(40) of this title (relating to What do certain words and terms mean in this chapter?). (B) A psychiatric evaluation, psychological evaluation, or psychosocial assessment must have been completed within: (i) 14 months of the date of admission, if the child is coming from another regulated placement; or (ii) Six months of the date of admission, if the child is not coming from another regulated placement. (C) The admission assessment must include the reason(s) for choosing treatment services for the child. (D) The admission assessment must include consideration given to any history of inpatient or outpatient treatment.</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
If: (2) You intend to provide treatment services for a child with intellectual disabilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Then:</th>
<th>Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(A) The admission assessment must include a written, dated, and signed:</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Psychological evaluation with psychometric testing; or</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Psychosocial assessment as defined in §748.43(40) of this title.</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) A psychological evaluation or psychosocial assessment must be completed within 14 months of the date of admission.</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C) A psychological evaluation must:</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Be performed by a licensed psychologist who has experience with intellectual disabilities or published scales;</td>
<td>Medium Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Include the use of standardized tests to determine the intellectual functioning of a child. The test results must be documented in the evaluation;</td>
<td>Medium Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) Determine and document the child's level of adaptive functioning; and</td>
<td>Medium Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv) Indicate manifestations of intellectual disabilities as defined in the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders 5 (DSM-5).</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(D) The admission assessment must include the reason(s) for choosing treatment services for the child.</td>
<td>Medium-Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(E) The admission assessment must include consideration given to any history of inpatient or outpatient treatment.</td>
<td>Medium-Low</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) You intend to provide treatment services for a child with primary medical needs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Then:</th>
<th>Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(A) The admission assessment must have a licensed physician’s signed, written orders as the basis for the child’s admission. The physician’s evaluation must confirm that the child can be cared for appropriately in a residential child-care operation.</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) The written orders must include orders for:</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Medications;</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Treatments;</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) Diet;</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv) Range-of-motion program at stated intervals;</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v) Habilitation, as appropriate; and</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vi) Any special medical or developmental procedures.</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C) The admission assessment must include the reason(s) for choosing treatment services for the child.</td>
<td>Medium-Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(D) The admission assessment must include consideration given to any history of inpatient or outpatient treatment.</td>
<td>Medium-Low</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If:</th>
<th>Then:</th>
<th>Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(4) The child’s behavior and/or history within the last two months indicates that the child is an immediate danger to himself or others</td>
<td>(A) The admission assessment must include a written, dated, and signed:</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(i) Psychiatric evaluation or psychological evaluation; or</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ii) Psychosocial assessment as defined in §748.43(40) of this title.</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) A psychiatric evaluation or psychological evaluation must include:</td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) The child’s diagnosis, if applicable;</td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) An assessment of the child’s needs and potential danger to himself or others; and</td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) Recommendations for care, treatment, and further evaluation. If the child is admitted, the recommendations must become part of the child’s plan of service and must be implemented.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C) A psychiatric evaluation, psychological evaluation, or psychosocial assessment must have been completed within:</td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) 14 months of the date of admission, if the child is coming from another regulated placement; or</td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Six months of the date of admission, if the child is not coming from another regulated placement.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(D) You must then evaluate your ability to provide services and safeguards appropriate to the child’s needs, including direct and continuous supervision, if needed.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**§748.1221. What must I do if I cannot obtain the required information for an admission assessment?**

*Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge*

*Division 1, Admission*

*January 2007*

(a) You must make reasonable efforts to obtain all required information.

(b) If you and the child’s parent determine that attempting to get information at the time of placement would not be in the child’s best interests, you may postpone attempting to acquire the information.

*(continued)*
(c) In the child’s admission assessment, you must document why a:

Low
   (1) Particular piece of information is unavailable; or

Low
   (2) Delay in obtaining a piece of information is necessary, including efforts made to obtain the information.

Helpful Information

Regarding subsection (a), Licensing expects documentation of at least three attempts to comply with a minimum standard requiring “reasonable effort” to obtain information. Efforts should be reasonably spaced, allowing enough time for a person to respond yet not unreasonably delaying the acquisition of the requested information.

Example: Calling a CPS caseworker or parent three times in one day would not be considered three separate “reasonable efforts” to obtain needed information, as this does not allow the person reasonable time to respond to each of the requests.

Example: Calling a CPS caseworker or parent once every three months to obtain information needed for an admission assessment would not be considered reasonable effort to obtain the information, as the third attempt would be made at least six months after the child was placed.

Example: Calling a CPS caseworker or parent once a week for three weeks to obtain information needed for an admission assessment would be considered reasonable effort to obtain the information, as this gives ample time for the person to respond to each call, and also seeks to obtain the information within one month of admission. No further attempts would be expected if the information was not obtained after these three attempts.

§748.1223. What are the medical requirements when I admit a child into care?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 1, Admission
September 2010

Medium
(a) You must ensure that the child has a medical examination by a health-care professional within 30 days after the date of admission. This exam is not required if you have documentation that the child has had a medical examination within the past year, including documentation in the child’s health passport if he is in DFPS conservatorship.

High
(b) If you admit a child with primary medical needs, you must provide the child with a medical examination by a health-care professional within seven days before or three days after the date of admission.

Medium-High
(c) If a child admitted shows symptoms of abuse or illness, a health-care professional must examine the child immediately.

(continued)
(d) The report and findings of any medical examination must be documented in the child’s record, according to §748.1531(b) and (c) of this title (relating to What general medical requirements must my operation meet?).

**Helpful Information**

Regarding subsection (a), there is one exception for those operations that contract with Child Protective Services. A child new to state conservatorship must receive a medical exam (Texas Health Steps Checkup) within 30 days after the date of admission into the foster care system. This must occur even if the child’s health passport indicates that the child received a medical exam prior to entering the foster care system.

§748.1225. What are the dental requirements when I admit a child into care?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 1, Admission
September 2010

(a) If the child is younger than three years old and a physician recommends a dental examination, then you must ensure that a dentist examines the child.

(b) A child three years old or older must have a dental appointment scheduled with a dentist within 30 days after the date of admission, and the examination must occur within 90 days after the date of admission. A dental examination is not required if you have documentation that the child has had a dental examination within the past year, including documentation in the child’s health passport if he is in DFPS conservatorship.

(c) The report and findings of the dental examination must be documented in the child’s record, according to §748.1501(b) and (c) of this title (relating to What general dental requirements must my operation meet?).

§748.1227. What must I document when I re-admit a child for care?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 1, Admission
January 2007

For re-admission, you must complete the admission documentation as if the child was never in your care; or for children that were discharged from your operation within the last 12 months, you may update the previous admission documentation.
Division 2, Emergency Admission

§748.1261. For which of my programs may I accept emergency admissions?

Neither a transitional living program nor a therapeutic camp program may accept emergency admissions. All other programs may accept emergency admissions.

§748.1263. What constitutes an emergency admission to my operation?

You may admit a child on an emergency basis if the child:

1. Is being removed from a situation involving alleged abuse or neglect;
2. Is an alleged perpetrator of abuse and cannot be served in the child's current placement due to his perpetrating behaviors;
3. Displays behavior that is an immediate danger to himself or others and cannot function or be served in his current setting;
4. Is abandoned and after exercising reasonable efforts, the child's identity cannot be immediately determined. The efforts made to obtain information on the child's identity must be documented in the child's record;
5. Is removed from his home or placement, and there is an immediate need to find a residence for the child;
6. Is released to your authorized emergency care program by a law enforcement or juvenile probation officer; or
7. Is without adult care.

§748.1265. May I take possession of a child through a law enforcement or juvenile probation officer?

You may take possession of a child from a law enforcement or juvenile probation officer only if you meet the requirements of Division 7, Subchapter H of Chapter 745 of this title (relating to Taking Possession of a Child Through Law Enforcement or a Juvenile Probation Officer).
§748.1269. For an emergency admission, when must I complete all of the requirements for an admission assessment?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 2, Emergency Admission
January 2007

Medium (a) For an emergency admission, you must complete all of the requirements (see Division 1 of this subchapter (relating to Admission)) for an admission assessment within 40 days from the date of the child’s admission.

Medium (b) In an emergency admission of a child receiving treatment services, the child must not continue in care for more than 30 days after the date of admission or 10 days after the date of admission for a residential treatment center, unless the child has received the psychological, psychiatric, psychometric, or physician’s evaluation that is required by §748.1219 of this title (relating to What are the additional admission requirements when I admit a child for treatment services?), and the evaluation indicates manifestations of the disorder requiring treatment services. All evaluations must be signed, dated, and documented in the child’s record.

§748.1271. At the time of an emergency admission, what information must I document in the child’s record?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 2, Emergency Admission
September 2010

At the time of the emergency admission you must document in the child’s record:

Medium-Low (1) A brief description of the circumstances necessitating the emergency admission;

Low (2) The date of admission;

Medium-High (3) Any allergies, such as food, medication, sting, and skin allergies;

Medium-High (4) Any chronic health conditions, such as asthma or diabetes;

High (5) Known contraindications to the use of restraint;

High (6) Identification of the child’s high-risk behavior(s), if applicable, and the safety plan staff and caregivers will implement related to the behavior(s); and

(7) For the purpose of providing treatment services:

Medium (A) A brief description of the child’s history;

Medium (B) The child’s current behavior; and

Medium-Low (C) Your evaluation of how the placement will meet the child’s needs and best interests.
Division 3, Educational Services

§748.1301. What responsibilities do I have for the education of a child in care?

You must arrange an appropriate education for each child, including:

(a) Ensuring the child in care attends an educational facility or program that is approved or accredited by the Texas Education Agency, the Southern Association of Colleges and Schools, the Texas Private School Accreditation Commission or by the out-of-state school district funding the child;

(b) For children receiving treatment services you must designate a liaison between the agency and the child’s school.

§748.1303. What responsibilities do I have for a child’s individual educational needs?

You must:

(a) Review report cards and other information received from teachers or school authorities with the child and provide necessary information to caregivers;

(b) Counsel and assist the child regarding adequate classroom performance;

(c) Permit, encourage, and make reasonable efforts to involve the child in extracurricular activities to the extent of the child’s interests and abilities and in accordance with the child’s service plan;

(d) Provide a quiet, well-lighted space for the child to study and allow regular times for homework and study;

(e) Know what emergency behavior interventions are permitted and being used with the child;

(f) Request IEP meetings if concerned with the child’s educational program or if the child does not appear to be making progress; and

(g) Attend IEP meetings and other school staffings and conferences to represent the child’s educational best interests, including the child being evaluated for and provided with related services needed to benefit from educational services, and positive behavior supports designed to decrease the need for negative disciplinary techniques or interventions.
§748.1305. If I have an educational program, what information must I provide to a child’s parent about that program?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 3, Educational Services
January 2007

If you have an educational program, you must include the following information in the discussion and in the written material you give to parents when you admit the child:

1. The name of any educational program operated on the premises of your operation;
2. Whether the program is accredited;
3. Whether the Texas Education Agency has approved the program;
4. Whether the educational course work is transferable to public schools; and
5. The credentials of the teachers, if the teachers are not approved and regulated by the State Board of Educator Certification (SBEC).
Division 4, Service Plans

**Helpful Information**

You may combine admission and service plan documentation, as long as the documentation meets the content requirements and time frames required by the applicable minimum standards. For example, you may combine an admission assessment and initial service plan for a child admitted as an emergency admission, as long as the content of the document complies with both §748.1217 and §748.1337 and the document is complete within 40 days of admission. A preliminary service plan would still be needed within 72 hours of admission, per §748.1331.

**§748.1331. What are the requirements for a preliminary service plan?**

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 4, Service Plans
January 2007

Medium-Low

(a) You must complete a preliminary service plan that addresses the immediate needs of a child, such as enrolling the child in school or obtaining needed medical care or clothing, within 72 hours of the child’s admission.

(b) In addition, for a child receiving treatment services the preliminary service plan must include:

- **Medium-Low** (1) A description of the child’s immediate treatment and care needs;
- **Medium-Low** (2) A description of the child’s immediate educational, medical, and dental needs, including possible side effects of medications or treatment prescribed to the child;
- **Medium-Low** (3) A description of how you will meet the child’s needs, including any necessary increased supervision or follow-up actions of possible side effects of medication or treatment provided to the child;
- **Medium** (4) The identification of any issues or concerns the child may have that could escalate a child’s behavior. Identification of a child’s issues or concerns must serve to avoid the use of unnecessary emergency behavior interventions with the child. Child concerns may include issues with food, eye contact, physical touch, personal property, or certain topics; and
- **Medium-Low** (5) A designation of who will be responsible for meeting each of the child’s needs.

Medium-Low

(c) The plan must be compatible with the information included in the child’s admission assessment.

Low

(d) You must document the plan in the child’s record.

Medium

(e) You must inform each professional level service provider and caregiver working with a child about the child’s preliminary service plan.

Medium

(f) You must implement and follow the preliminary service plan.

(continued)
Best Practice Suggestion

It is a good idea to include in service plans specific information about the situations that trigger significant emotional responses for the child (e.g., enclosed spaces, darkness, bedtime), successful intervention strategies to effectively de-escalate those responses, anger and anxiety management options to assist the child in calming, techniques for self-management, and specific goals that address the targeted behaviors that most often lead to emergency behavior interventions for the child.

§748.1333. Who must be involved in developing the preliminary service plan for children receiving treatment services?

The treatment director or a professional level service provider must develop, sign, and date the preliminary service plan for children receiving treatment services.

§748.1335. When must I complete an initial service plan?

You must complete the initial service plan within 40 days after you admit the child.

§748.1337. What must a child’s initial service plan include?

(a) You must base the child’s initial service plan on the child’s needs identified in the child’s admission assessment. The service planning team may prioritize the child’s service planning goals and objectives based on the child’s admission assessment. However, any required service plan components not initially addressed must have a justification for the delay in addressing the needs.

(b) The child’s initial service plan must be documented in the child’s record and include those items that a preliminary plan must include (see §748.1331 of this title (relating to What are the requirements for a preliminary service plan?)), and the items noted below for each specific type of service that you provide the child:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Service</th>
<th>Items that must be included:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Child-care services</td>
<td>(A) The child’s needs identified in the admission assessment, in addition to basic needs related to day-to-day care and development, including:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(i) Medical needs, including scheduled medical exams and plans for recommended follow-up treatment;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ii) Dental needs, including scheduled dental exams and plans for recommended follow-up treatment;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(continued)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

### Type of Service

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items that must be included:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Child-care services (continued)</td>
<td>(iii) Intellectual functioning, including any testing and plans for recommended follow-up;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(iv) Developmental functioning, including any developmental delays and plans to improve or remediate developmental functioning;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(v) Educational needs and how those needs will be met, including planning for high school completion and post-secondary education and training, if appropriate, and any school evaluations or recommendations;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(vi) Plans for social, recreation, and leisure activities;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(vii) Plans for integrating the child into the community and community activities, as appropriate;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(viii) Therapeutic needs, including plans for psychological/psychiatric testing and follow-up treatment and use of psychotropic medications; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ix) Cultural identity needs, including assisting children in connecting with their culture in the community;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B)</td>
<td>(B) Plans for maintaining and improving the child’s relationship with family members, including recommendations for visitation and contacts between the child and the child’s parents, the child and the child’s siblings, and the child and the child’s extended family;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C)</td>
<td>(C) Recent data from the current caregiver’s evaluation of the child’s behavior and level of functioning;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(D)</td>
<td>(D) Specific goals and strategies to meet the child’s needs, including instructions to caregivers responsible for the care of the child. Instructions must include specific information about:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(i) Level of supervision required;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ii) Discipline techniques;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(iii) Behavior intervention techniques;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(iv) Plans for trips and visits away from the operation; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(v) Any actions the caregivers must take or conditions the caregivers must be aware of to meet the child’s special needs, such as medications, medical care, dietary needs, psychiatric care, how to communicate with the child, and reward systems;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(E)</td>
<td>(E) If the child is 13 years old or older, a plan for educating the child in the following areas:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(i) Healthy interpersonal relationships;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ii) Healthy boundaries;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(iii) Pro-social communication skills;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(iv) Sexually transmitted diseases; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(v) Human reproduction;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of Service</td>
<td>Items that must be included:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| (1) Child-care services (continued) | (F) If the child is 14 years old or older, plans for the caregivers to assist the child in obtaining experiential life-skills training to improve his transition to independent living. Plans must:  
  (i) Be tailored to a child’s skills and abilities; and  
  (ii) Include training in practical activities that include, but are not limited to, grocery shopping, meal preparation, cooking, using public transportation, performing basic household tasks, and balancing a checkbook;  
(G) For children 16 years old and older, preparation for independent living;  
(H) For children who exhibit high-risk behaviors, such as self harm, sexual aggression, runaway, or substance abuse:  
  (i) Plans to minimize the risk of harm to the child or others, such as special instructions for caregivers, sleeping arrangements, or bathroom arrangements; and  
  (ii) A specific safety contract developed between the child and employee that addresses how the child’s safety needs will be maintained;  
(I) Expected outcomes of placement for the child and estimated length of stay in care;  
(J) Plans for discharge;  
(K) The names and roles of persons who participated in the development of the child’s service plan;  
(L) The date the service plan was developed and completed;  
(M) The effective date of the service plan; and  
(N) The signatures of the service planning team members that were involved in the development of the service plan. |
| (2) Treatment services | (A) The child-care services planning requirements noted above;  
(B) A description of the emotional, behavioral, and physical conditions that require treatment services;  
(C) A description of the emotional, behavioral, and physical conditions the child must achieve and maintain to function in a less restrictive setting, including any special treatment program and/or other services and activities that are planned to help the child achieve and to function in a less restrictive setting; and  
(D) A list of emotional, physical, and social needs that require specific professional expertise, and plans to obtain the appropriate professional consultation and treatment for those needs. Any specialized testing, recommendations, and/or treatment must be documented in the child’s record. |
### Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Service</th>
<th>Items that must be included:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(3) Treatment services for children with mental retardation</td>
<td>(A) The child-care and treatment services planning requirements noted above;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(B) A minimum of one hour per day of visual, auditory and tactile stimulation to enhance the child’s physical, neurological, and emotional development;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(C) An educational or training plan encouraging normalization appropriate to the child’s functioning; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(D) Career planning for older adolescents who are not receiving treatment services for severe or profound mental retardation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Transitional living program</td>
<td>(A) Child-care service planning requirements;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(B) Plans for encouraging the child to participate in community life and to form interpersonal relationships/friendships outside the transitional living program, such as community team sports, Eagle Scouts, and employment after school;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(C) Consumer education, such as meal planning, meal preparation, grocery shopping, public transportation, searching for an apartment, and obtaining utility services;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(D) Career planning, including assisting the child in enrolling in an educational or vocational job training program;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(E) Money management and assisting the child in establishing a personal bank account;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(F) Assisting the child with how to access resources, such as medical and dental care, therapy, mental health care, an attorney, the police, and other emergency assistance;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(G) Assisting the child in obtaining the child’s social security number, birth certificate, and a driver’s license or a Department of Public Safety identification card, as needed; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(H) Problem-solving, such as assessing personal strengths and needs, stress management, reviewing options, assessing consequences for actions taken and possible short-term and long-term results, and establishing goals and planning for the future.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) For children receiving treatment services, the plan must address all of the child’s waking hours.

### §748.1339. Who must be involved in developing an initial service plan?

**Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge**  
**Division 4, Service Plans**  
**January 2007**

(a) A service planning team must develop the service plan. The team must consist of:

(1) At least one of the child’s current caregivers; and

(2) At least one professional level service provider who provides direct services to the child.

(continued)
(b) If you are providing treatment services to the child, the team must also consist of two of the following professions, which may or may not include additional members:

(1) A licensed professional counselor;
(2) A psychologist;
(3) A psychiatrist or physician;
(4) A licensed registered nurse;
(5) A licensed masters level social worker;
(6) A licensed or registered occupational therapist; or
(7) Any other person in a related discipline or profession that is licensed or regulated in accordance with state law.

(c) The child, as appropriate, and the parents must be invited to the meeting to develop the service plan.

§748.1341. When must I inform the child’s parent(s) of an initial service plan meeting?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 4, Service Plans
January 2007

(a) You must give the child’s parent(s) at least two weeks advance notice of the meeting.

(b) The child’s record must include documentation of the notice and any responses from the parents.

§748.1343. Must a professional level service provider or a professional who must participate in a child’s service plan be an employee of my operation?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 4, Service Plans
January 2007

No. You may employ or contract with a professional level service provider or any other professional who participates in a child’s service plan.
§748.1345. What roles do professional level service providers have in service planning?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 4, Service Plans
January 2007

The roles of professional level service providers in service planning include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Treatment Service</th>
<th>The roles of professional level service providers in service planning include:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| (1) Emotional disorder and pervasive development disorder | (A) Reviewing the child’s diagnoses;  
(B) Reviewing the identified needs and the plan for treatment based on the child’s diagnoses;  
(C) Reviewing the techniques, strategies, and therapeutic interventions that are planned for the child to improve adaptive functioning; and  
(D) Reviewing any medications prescribed for a child with special review of psychotropic medications; the presence or absence of medication side effects, including the effects of the medications on the child’s behavior; laboratory findings; and any reason the child should not use a medication. |
| (2) Mental retardation | (A) Assessing the child’s educational needs and progress toward meeting those needs;  
(B) Ensuring coordination between educators, caregivers, operation employees, and other professionals involved in the child’s treatment; and  
(C) Providing information to the education system on the strategies and techniques used with the child in the operation. |
| (3) Primary medical needs | (A) Reviewing medications prescribed for a child;  
(B) Recommending special equipment needed by a child; and  
(C) Reviewing special instructions and training to caregivers for the daily care of the child. |

§748.1347. What must I document regarding a professional level service provider’s participation in the development of an initial service plan?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 4, Service Plans
January 2007

(a) You must document the professional level service provider’s:

Low  
(1) Name; and  
Low  
(2) Date of participation.

(b) The professional level service provider must sign and date the document. If the provider disagrees with any portion of the plan, the provider must document the issue(s) of contention before signing it.
§748.1349. With whom do I share the initial service plan?

(a) You must give a copy or summary of the initial service plan to the:

1. Child, when appropriate;

2. Child’s parents; and

3. Child’s caregivers.

(b) If you do not share the service plan or summary with the child, you must document your justification for not sharing the plan in the child’s record.

(c) You must document in the child’s record that you provided a copy or summary of the service plan to the child’s parents.

§748.1351. When must I implement a service plan?

You must implement and follow an initial service plan as soon as all of the service planning team members have reviewed and signed the plan, but no later than 10 days after the date of the service-planning meeting.

Division 5, Service Plan Reviews and Updates

§748.1381. How often must I review and update a service plan?

Except for when the child’s placement within your operation changes because of a change in the child’s needs, you must review and update the service plan as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Service</th>
<th>Review and Update</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Child-care services</td>
<td>At least 180 days from the date of the child’s last service plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Treatment services for emotional disorder, pervasive developmental disorder, or primary medical needs</td>
<td>At least 90 days from the date of the child’s last service plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Treatment services for mental retardation</td>
<td>In the first year of care, the plan must be reviewed at least every 180 days from the date of the child’s last service plan. Thereafter, the plan must be reviewed at least annually from the date of the child’s last service plan review.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§748.1383. How does a child’s transfer affect the timing of the review of a child’s service plan?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 5, Service Plan Reviews and Updates
January 2007

Medium-Low  (a) You must review a child’s service plan whenever the child’s placement changes because of a change in the child’s needs.

(b) If the child’s placement changes for another reason:

Low  (1) The child’s service planning team must approve the decision not to review the plan; and

Low  (2) You must document the decision not to review the plan.

§748.1385. How do I review and update a service plan?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 5, Service Plan Reviews and Updates
January 2007

To review and update a service plan, you must:

Medium-Low  (1) Evaluate the child’s progress and the effectiveness of strategies and techniques used toward meeting identified needs, including educational progress reports and medical interventions;

Medium-Low  (2) Identify any new needs and strategies or techniques to meet these needs, including instructions to appropriate employees;

Medium-Low  (3) Document any achieved or changed objectives;

Medium-Low  (4) If the review shows no progress towards meeting the identified needs of the child, document reasons for continued placement;

Medium  (5) Evaluate the possible effectiveness and side effects in the use of psychotropic medications prescribed for the child, any change in psychotropic medications during the period since the last review, and the behaviors and reactions of the child observed by caregivers, professional level service providers, and parents, if applicable;

Low  (6) Document visitation and contacts between the child and the child’s parents, the child and the child’s siblings, and the child and the child’s extended family;

Low  (7) Update the estimated length-of-stay and discharge plans, if changed;

Medium-Low  (8) Determine for children receiving treatment services for emotional disorders, pervasive developmental disorders, or primary medical needs whether to:

(A) Continue the placement;

(B) Continue the placement as child-care services;

(C) Transfer the child to a less restrictive setting; or

(D) Refer the child to an inpatient hospital;

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Medium-High</td>
<td>(9) Evaluate the use and effectiveness of emergency behavior intervention techniques, if used, since the last service plan. If applicable, this evaluation must focus on:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(A) The frequency, patterns, and effectiveness of types of emergency behavior interventions;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(B) Strategies to reduce the need for emergency behavior interventions overall; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(C) Specific strategies to reduce the need for use of personal and mechanical restraints, emergency medication, and/or seclusion, where applicable;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium-Low</td>
<td>(10) Document in the child’s record the review and update of the plan; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>(11) Document the names of the persons participating in the review and update.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§748.1387. Are the notification, participation, implementation, and documentation requirements for a service plan review and update the same as for an initial service plan?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 5, Service Plan Reviews and Updates
January 2007

Medium-Low Yes, the same requirements found in Division 4 of this subchapter (relating to Service Plans) apply to a service plan review and update.

§748.1389. How often must I re-evaluate the intellectual functioning of a child receiving treatment services for mental retardation?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 5, Service Plan Reviews and Updates
January 2007

Medium-Low (a) Each child’s intellectual functioning must be re-evaluated at least every three years by a psychologist qualified to provide psychological testing; or

Medium-Low (b) A psychologist must determine the need and frequency for a specific child’s intellectual functioning to be re-evaluated, such as a young child who may require more frequent testing. This determination, including justification for the time frame, must be documented in the child’s record annually by the service planning team.
Division 6, Discharge and Transfer Planning

§748.1431. What does a “transfer” of a child in care mean?

A transfer refers to a child in care who is moved from one of your programs to another one of your programs that you operate under the same permit or at the same location. For example, you may transfer a child from your emergency care services program to your transitional living services program, if the programs are under the same permit or at the same location. You may also transfer a child from your general residential operation to your child-placing agency, if your child-placing agency office is located on the same property as your general residential operation.

Helpful Information

A transfer must comply with §§748.1433, 748.1435, and 748.1437. A transfer does not require:

• A discharge summary
• An admission assessment
• A preliminary or initial service plan

See §748.1383 regarding service plan updates related to transfers.

§748.1433. Who must plan a child’s non-emergency discharge or transfer?

(a) You must involve the following persons in planning the child’s non-emergency discharge or transfer:

Low (1) At least one of the child’s current caregivers; and
Low (2) At least one professional level service provider involved in the child’s service planning.

(b) You must invite the following persons to participate in planning the child’s non-emergency discharge or transfer, if appropriate:

Low (1) The child;
Low (2) The child’s parent(s); and
Low (3) Any other person pertinent to the child’s care.

(c) If you are unable to plan the transfer or discharge with the persons as required in subsections (a) and (b) of this section, you must document in the child’s record the reason why. For example, an emergency transfer or discharge was necessary or the child met the requirements to consent for emergency care services and decided not to include his parents in planning for the child’s transfer or discharge.

(continued)
(d) If a child in your care is not receiving treatment services, you must inform him of his non-emergency discharge or transfer at least four days prior to the date of the discharge or transfer, unless your licensed child-care administrator or a professional level service provider has clear justification for not giving him such notice. The licensed child-care administrator or professional level service provider who determines the justification for the child not having the advance notice of the discharge or transfer, must put the justification in writing and sign and date it. The justification must be in the child’s record.

(e) If a child in your care is receiving treatment services, you must inform him of his non-emergency discharge or transfer at least four days prior to the date of the discharge or transfer, unless your treatment director, three members of the child’s service planning team, or the child’s psychiatrist or psychologist has justification for not giving him such notice. Whoever determines the justification for the child not having the advance notice of the discharge or transfer must put the justification in writing and sign and date it. The justification must be in the child’s record.

§748.1435. How do I discharge or transfer a child who is an immediate danger to himself or others?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 6, Discharge and Transfer Planning
January 2007

Medium-High
An employee of your operation must accompany the child to the receiving operation, agency, or person unless the child’s parent or law enforcement transports the child.

§748.1437. What must I document in the child’s record at the time of a discharge or transfer?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 6, Discharge and Transfer Planning
September 2010

At the time of a discharge or transfer, you must document the following:

1. The date and circumstances of the discharge or transfer;
2. Date and time the child was informed of his discharge or transfer, if applicable;
3. For discharge, the name, address, telephone number, and relationship of the person to whom you discharge the child, unless the child legally consents to his discharge. If the child legally consents to his discharge and does not want to involve the child’s parent(s), you must document this in the child’s record;
4. The child’s service plans while in your care for the past 12 months;
5. A list of medications the child is taking, the dosage, frequency, and reason the medication was prescribed;
6. Any treatment for a physical condition that is in progress and requires continuing or follow-up medical care; and
7. For emergency discharge or transfer, the explanation given to the child regarding the reason for the discharge or transfer and the child’s reaction to the discharge or transfer.
§748.1439. When I discharge a child, what information must I provide to the next placement or caregiver?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 6, Discharge and Transfer Planning
September 2010

(a) On or before the child’s discharge, you must attempt to obtain legal consent to release the information in subsection (b) of this section. If consent is not obtained, your attempt to obtain consent must be documented in the child’s record. If consent is obtained, the information must be provided to the receiving placement or caregiver within 15 days of the date the child is discharged.

(b) If not already provided at the time of discharge, copies of the following documentation must be provided to the next placement or caregiver:

(1) A written discharge summary, which must include:
   (A) Services provided to the child while in your care;
   (B) Accomplishments of the child while in your care;
   (C) An assessment of the child’s remaining needs;
   (D) Recommendations about the services to meet the child’s remaining needs;
   (E) Support resources for the child, including telephone numbers and addresses; and
   (F) Aftercare plans and recommendations for the child, including medical, psychiatric, psychological, dental, educational, and social appointments;

(2) The child’s background information, including progress notes for the past 60 days, if applicable;

(3) Any unresolved incidents or investigations involving the child, if applicable; and

(4) Assessments and/or evaluations that you have performed for the child, including the child’s admission assessment, diagnostic assessment, educational assessment, neurological assessment, and psychiatric or psychological evaluation.

§748.1443. What constitutes an emergency discharge or transfer?

Subchapter I, Admission, Service Planning, and Discharge
Division 6, Discharge and Transfer Planning
January 2007

An emergency discharge or transfer occurs when:

(1) The parent withdraws a child unexpectedly from care;
(2) There is a medical emergency requiring inpatient care;
(3) The child is absent from your operation and cannot be located; or
(4) There is an immediate danger to the child or others and you determine that you cannot serve the child.
Division 7, Release of Child

§748.1481. To whom may I release a child?

Except in an emergency, you must only release a child to the child’s parent, a person designated by the parent, law enforcement authorities, or a person authorized by law to take possession of the child.

You must instruct all employees and service providers to follow your policies for:

1. Releasing a child;
2. Verifying the identity of a person authorized to pick up a child but whom the caregiver does not know;
3. Recording the identity of the person in a log or other designated location; and
4. Retaining the identifying information at the operation until the child returns.

Best Practice Suggestion

If you suspect the person picking up a child is under the influence of drugs or alcohol, you have the option of contacting local law enforcement to request their assistance.

You may not legally prevent the child from being picked up by a parent or person designated by the parent; however, you have the option of addressing this issue at admission by asking parents what they would like for you to do if you do not feel comfortable releasing the child to one of the parents or their designee and signing an agreement to this effect.

Law enforcement officers and DFPS Child Protective Services staff have the authority by law to remove a child without a parent’s permission.

You may want to ask to see identification of persons you do not know.
§748.1501. What general dental requirements must my operation meet?

(a) A child in your care must receive dental care:

1. Initially, according to the requirements in §748.1225 of this title (relating to What are the dental requirements when I admit a child into care?);

2. At as early an age as necessary;

3. As needed for relief of pain and infections; and

4. As needed for ongoing maintenance of dental health.

(b) The child’s record must include a written record of each dental examination specifying the:

1. Date of the examination;

2. Procedures completed;

3. Follow-up treatment recommended and any appointments scheduled;

4. The child’s refusal to accept dental treatment, if applicable; and

5. A copy of the results of the dental examination.

(c) For a child in DFPS conservatorship, you must supplement any information already documented in the child’s health passport in order to comply with subsection (b) of this section. In your written record for the child, you are not required to repeat information that is already in the child’s health passport.

(d) You must obtain follow-up dental work recommended by the dentist, such as treatment of cavities and cleaning.
Best Practice Suggestion

Here are some best practices for use and storage of a child’s toothbrush:

- Soft-bristle toothbrushes, provided for each child’s individual use after meals and snack times, which are:
  - Age appropriate;
  - Labeled with the child’s full name;
  - Stored in a manner that prevents the toothbrushes from touching each other and the bristles are not in contact with any surface during storage; and
  - Replaced immediately if the bristles become splayed.
- For children under six years old, toothbrushes stored out of children’s reach when not in use.

Here are some best practices for use of toothpaste:

- Provide fluoride toothpaste for children three years old or older, or for children who have learned how to spit out toothpaste when brushing.
- Use only a pea-sized amount of toothpaste for children under six years old. Provide adult supervision in the use of toothpaste for children under six years old or children who have not learned how to spit out toothpaste when brushing. This helps to prevent swallowing the toothpaste and possible fluoride poisoning.

§748.1503. Who must determine the need and frequency of ongoing maintenance of dental health for a child?

A licensed dentist must determine the need and frequency of ongoing maintenance of dental health. You must comply with dentist recommendations for examinations and treatment for each child.

§748.1505. Who must perform dental examinations and provide dental treatment?

A health-care professional licensed in the United States to practice dentistry must provide dental care.
Division 2, Medical Care

§748.1531. What general medical requirements must my operation meet?

(a) A child in your care must receive medical care:

Medium-High (1) Initially, according to the requirements in §748.1223 of this title (relating to What are the medical requirements when I admit a child into care?);

High (2) As needed for injury, illness, and pain; and

Medium-High (3) As needed for ongoing maintenance of medical health.

Medium (b) The child’s record must include a written record of each medical examination specifying:

Medium (1) The date of the examination;

Medium (2) The procedures completed;

Medium (3) The follow-up treatment recommended and any appointments scheduled;

Medium (4) The child’s refusal to accept medical treatment, if applicable;

Medium (5) The results of the medical examination;

Medium (6) If the medical examination is a result of an injury or medical incident, the documentation of the circumstances surrounding the incident, including the date and time of the incident; and

Medium (7) Any other documentation provided by the health-care professional who performed the examination.

Medium (c) For a child in DFPS conservatorship, you must supplement any information already documented in the child’s health passport in order to comply with subsection (b) of this section. In your written record for the child, you are not required to repeat information that is already in the child’s health passport.

Medium-High (d) You must obtain follow-up medical treatment as recommended by the health-care professional.

§748.1533. Who determines the need and frequency for ongoing maintenance of medical care and treatment for a child?

Medium-High A health-care professional determines the need and frequency for ongoing maintenance of medical care and treatment for a child.
§748.1535. Who must perform medical examinations and provide medical treatment for a child?

A health-care professional licensed in the United States to practice in an appropriate medical or health-care discipline must perform medical examinations and provide medical treatment for a child.

§748.1539. What immunizations must a child in my care have?

(a) Each child that you admit must meet and continue to meet the applicable immunization requirements specified by §42.043 of the Human Resources Code and the Department of State Health Services.

(b) You must maintain current immunizations records for each child in your care. For a child in DFPS conservatorship, documentation in the child’s health passport is sufficient.

(c) Unless the child is exempt from immunization requirements, all immunizations required for the child’s age must:

(1) Be completed by the date of admission; or
(2) Begin within 30 days after the date of admission.

§748.1541. What are the exemptions from immunization requirements?

Exemptions for immunization requirements must meet criteria specified by:

(1) §42.043 of the Human Resources Code; or
(2) The Department of State Health Services rules in 25 TAC §97.62 (relating to Exclusions from Compliance).

Helpful Information

You can find more information in the Department of State Health Services’ rules at 25 TAC Chapter 97, Subchapter B (relating to Immunization Requirements in Texas Elementary and Secondary Schools and Institutions of Higher Education). You can access it on the Department of State Health Services’ website at: www.dshs.state.tx.us/immunize, or at your local or state health department.
§748.1543. What documentation is acceptable for an immunization record?

(a) An original or facsimile of the immunization record must include:

1. The child’s name and birth date;
2. The number of doses and vaccine type;
3. The month, day, and year the child received each vaccination; and
4. One of the following:
   (A) A signature or rubber stamp signature from the health-care professional who administered the vaccine; or
   (B) A registered nurse’s documentation of the immunization that is provided by a health-care professional, as long as the health-care professional’s name and qualifications are documented.

(b) Documentation of an immunization record on file at your operation may be:

1. The original record;
2. A photocopy;
3. An official immunization record generated from a state or local health authority, such as a registry;
4. A record received from school officials, including a record from another state; or
5. The child’s health passport, for a child in DFPS conservatorship.

§748.1545. Must children in my care have a vision and hearing screening?

(a) You must ensure that each child you admit is screened for possible vision and hearing problems that meet the requirements of the Special Senses and Communication Disorders Act, Health and Safety Code, Chapter 36. If problems are detected, the child must have a professional vision and hearing examination.

(b) For each child required to be screened, you must keep one of the following in each child’s record:

1. The individual vision and hearing screening results; however, results found in the child’s health passport if the child is in DFPS conservatorship are sufficient to meet this requirement;
2. A signed statement from the child’s parent that the child’s screening records are current and on file at the program or school the child attends away from the operation. The statement must be dated and include the name, address, and telephone number of the program or school; or

(continued)
(3) An affidavit from the child’s parent stating that the vision or hearing screening and/or examination conflicts with the tenets or practices of a church or religious denomination of the parents.

**Helpful Information**

You can refer to the Health and Safety Code, §36.011, for specific information on vision and hearing screening, including determining which children must be screened and the timeframes for screening. This information may be accessed on the Department of State Health Services’ website at: [www.dshs.state.tx.us/vhs/](http://www.dshs.state.tx.us/vhs/).

§748.1547. What must I do if a child in my care is identified as needing a diagnostic vision or hearing examination?

**Subchapter J, Child Care**  
**Division 2, Medical Care**  
**January 2007**

You must:

1. Schedule the child for a professional examination and needed health services;
2. Ensure the professional and medical recommendations are carried out; and
3. Convey the information concerning the child’s visual and/or hearing difficulty to the educational and operation caregivers, so the recommended adjustments can be made in programs.

§748.1549. What special equipment must I provide for a child with a physical disability?

**Subchapter J, Child Care**  
**Division 2, Medical Care**  
**January 2007**

When recommended by a physician or other health-care professional, you must ensure that a child with a physical disability has any special equipment that can be reasonably obtained.

§748.1551. How often must the physician review a child with primary medical needs?

**Subchapter J, Child Care**  
**Division 2, Medical Care**  
**January 2007**

(a) A licensed physician must review a child’s primary medical needs:

1. At least every 90 days or on a schedule recommended by the child’s physician; and
2. Whenever a medical or related problem occurs.

(continued)
(b) The review must address:

Medium-High (1) Whether the child can continue to be cared for appropriately in the operation; and

Medium-High (2) Any new or changed orders regarding the items outlined in §748.1219(3)(B) of this title (relating to What are the additional admission requirements when I admit a child for treatment services?).

Medium (c) Documentation of each physician review must be filed in the child’s record.

Division 3, Communicable Diseases

§748.1581. What health precautions must I take if someone in my operation has a communicable disease?

You must notify the Department of State Health Services (DSHS) after you become aware that a person in your care, a person who resides at your operation, an employee, a contract service provider, or a volunteer has contracted a communicable disease that the law requires you to report to the DSHS as specified in 25 TAC 97, Subchapter A (relating to Control of Communicable Diseases).

(b) If a person in your care or a person who resides at your operation has symptoms of a communicable disease that is reportable to the Department of State Health Services, you must:

Medium-High (1) Consult a health-care professional about the person’s treatment;

Medium-High (2) Follow the treating physician’s orders, which may include separating the person from others;

Medium (3) Notify the person’s parent, if applicable; and

Medium-High (4) Sanitize all items used by the sick person before another person uses one of them.

Medium-High (c) If a health-care professional diagnoses a person in your care or a person who resides at your operation with a communicable disease that may be spread through casual contact, a health-care professional must authorize the person’s participation in routine activity at your operation. The authorization must:

Medium-Low (1) Be in the person’s record, if the person is in care at your operation;

Medium (2) Include a written statement that the person will not pose a serious threat to the health of the others; and

Medium (3) Include any specific instructions and precautions to be taken for the protection of others.

(continued)
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

(d) If an employee, contract service provider, or volunteer has a communicable disease that may be spread through casual contact, you must obtain written authorization from a health-care professional for the person to be present at the operation. The written authorization must include a statement that the person will not pose a serious threat to the health of the others.

(e) You must follow any written instructions and precautions specified by a health-care professional.

Helpful Information

Communicable diseases that exclude a child from routine activity are defined by the Department of State Health Services (DSHS) in 25 TAC §97.7 (relating to Diseases Requiring Exclusion from Child-Care Facilities and Schools). You can obtain this information from the Department of State Health Services or Licensing staff.

§748.1583. Who must have a tuberculosis (TB) examination?

(a) All persons over the age of one year old must have a documented tuberculosis screening that was conducted as recommended by the Center for Disease Control, within 30 days before or after beginning to live, work, or volunteer at your operation unless the person:

(1) Has lived, worked, or volunteered at a regulated residential child-care operation within the previous 12 months. For example, an employee beginning employment in a regulated residential child-care operation for the first time would need a baseline tuberculosis screening. Employment in a different residential child-care operation would not require a new screening, as long as documentation in paragraph (2) of this subsection is also provided. If the employee left employment in regulated residential child-care for more than 12 months and then returned, a new screening would be required; and

(2) Provides documentation of a tuberculosis screening.

(b) Documentation must consist of a copy of the results of the baseline tuberculosis screening or chest radiograph, which must be in the person’s record at your operation within 40 days of the person beginning to live, work, or volunteer at your operation. Documentation of a copy of the results of treatment (if treatment is required) must also be maintained in the person’s record. For a child in DFPS conservatorship, documentation in the child’s health passport is sufficient.

(c) Except on the advice of a physician, no additional screening is required for a person who continues to live, work, and/or volunteer in a regulated residential child-care setting.
Helpful Information

Current CDC recommendations are as follows:

- Conduct a baseline tuberculosis screening. This screening includes a two-step tuberculosis skin test or a single blood assay for mycobacterium tuberculosis to test for infection with mycobacterium tuberculosis.

- After the initial baseline screening is conducted and shows negative for tuberculosis, no other testing is required as long as the person continues to live, work, or volunteer in a regulated residential child-care operation.

- In any of the following circumstances, use a chest radiograph to exclude TB disease:
  - The person’s baseline screening shows positive,
  - The result shows a mycobacterium tuberculosis infection, or
  - There is documentation of treatment for latent tuberculosis infection or tuberculosis disease.

Obtain the chest radiograph within a six-month period from the initial baseline screening. Repeat radiographs are not needed unless symptoms or signs of TB disease develop, unless recommended by a physician, or unless the person ceases to live, work, or volunteer in a regulated residential child-care operation for more than 12 months.

Division 4, Protective Devices

§748.1611. What is a protective device?

Subchapter J, Child Care
Division 4, Protective Devices
September 2010

(a) A protective device:
   (1) Protects a person from involuntary self-injurious behavior or permits wounds to heal; and
   (2) Does not prohibit a person’s mobility.

(b) Examples of a protective device are helmets, elbow guards, mittens, and wheelchair seat belts.

(c) If used appropriately, devices intended to encourage mobility or minimally restrain a young child for safety purposes, such as wheelchairs, car seats, high chairs, strollers, bed rails, and child leashes manufactured and sold specifically to harness a young child for safety purposes, are not protective devices.
§748.1613. What does “involuntary self-injurious behavior” mean when used in this division?

Involuntary self-injurious behavior means a person’s physical movements that are automatic and not subject to control of the person’s will that may inflict injury to the person.

§748.1615. May I use protective devices?

(a) You may use protective devices if a licensed physician orders their use for a specific child. The orders must indicate the circumstances under which the protective device is permitted.

(b) You may not use protective devices as:

1. Punishment;
2. Retribution or retaliation;
3. A means to get a child to comply;
4. A convenience for caregivers or other persons; or
5. A substitute for effective treatment or habilitation.

(c) You must document the use of protective devices in the child’s record, service plan, and service plan reviews. The service planning team must discuss and document in the child’s service plan reviews:

1. Clinical justification for continued use of protective devices; and
2. Ways to reduce the need for protective devices.

§748.1617. Who may use PRN orders with respect to protective devices?

A licensed physician ordering protective devices may use PRN orders. The physician must review PRN orders for protective devices at least every 90 days.
Division 5, Supportive Devices

§748.1631. What is a supportive device?

(a) A supportive device is used:
   (1) To support a person’s posture;
   (2) To assist a person who cannot obtain and/or maintain normal physical functioning to improve his mobility and independent functioning; or
   (3) As an adjunct to proper care and treatment, for example physical therapy.

(b) The purpose of a supportive device is not to restrict movement.

§748.1633. May I use supportive devices?

(a) You may use supportive devices if a licensed physician orders their use for a specific child. The orders must indicate the circumstances under which the supportive device is permitted.

(b) You may not use a supportive device as a substitute for appropriate nursing care.

(c) You may not use supportive devices that include tying or depriving or limiting the use of a child’s hands or feet.

(d) You may not use supportive devices as:
   (1) Punishment;
   (2) Retribution or retaliation;
   (3) Means to get a child to comply;
   (4) A convenience for caregivers or other persons; or
   (5) A substitute for effective treatment or habilitation.

(e) If a device is not specifically for assisting with sleep or safety during sleep, you must remove the device during rest periods.

(f) You must document the use of supportive devices in the child’s record, service plan, and service plan reviews. The service planning team must discuss and document in the child’s service plan review:
   (1) Clinical justification for continued use of supportive devices; and
   (2) Ways to reduce the need for supportive devices.
§748.1635. Who may use PRN orders with respect to supportive devices?

A licensed physician ordering supportive devices may use PRN orders. The physician must review PRN orders for supportive devices at least every 90 days.

Division 6, Tobacco Use

§748.1661. What policies must I enforce regarding tobacco products?

(a) A child may not use or possess tobacco products.

(b) An adult may not smoke tobacco products in the children’s living quarters or inside any building on your premises where children are present.

(c) An adult may only smoke tobacco products on your premises at a safe distance from the children’s living quarters.

(d) No one may smoke tobacco products in motor vehicles when transporting children.

Division 7, Nutrition and Hydration

§748.1691. How often must I feed children in care?

(a) You must feed an infant whenever the infant is hungry.

(b) For a toddler or school-age child:

(1) You must provide the child with three meals and at least one snack a day; and

(2) No more than 14 hours may pass between the last meal or snack of the day and the serving of the first meal of the following day.

Best Practice Suggestion

Best practice suggests that toddlers and pre-school children should not go more than three hours without a meal or snack being offered, unless the child is sleeping or unless otherwise justified in writing by the child’s health-care professional. Likewise, school-age children should not go more than six hours without a meal or snack being offered, unless the child is sleeping or unless otherwise justified in writing by the child’s health-care professional.
§748.1693. What type of food and water must I provide children?

(a) You must provide a child with food that is:

High

(1) Of adequate variety, quality, and in sufficient quantity to supply the nutrients needed for proper growth and development according to the United States Department of Agriculture guidelines; and

High

(2) Appropriate for the child’s age and activity level.

(b) You must not serve a child nutrient concentrates and supplements, such as protein powders, liquid protein, vitamins, minerals, and other nonfood substances, in lieu of food to meet the child’s daily nutritional needs, except with written instructions from a licensed health-care professional.

(c) You must ensure drinking water is always available to each child and is served in a safe and sanitary manner. Children must be well hydrated and must be encouraged to drink water during physical activity and in warm weather.

Best Practice Suggestion

Children’s Nutrition

Research suggests the following:

• Milk and milk products served to children 12 months old or older should be Grade A pasteurized or from sources approved by the Department of State Health Services.

  The following milks do not contain the right amounts of all the nutrients infants need and can harm an infant’s health. Iron-fortified infant formula is the best substitute for breast milk. Infants should not be given the following unless recommended by the infant’s health-care professional:

  • Cow’s milk;
  • Evaporated cow’s milk or home-prepared evaporated cow’s milk formula;
  • Sweetened condensed milk;
  • Goat’s milk;
  • Soy milk; or
  • Imitation milks, including those made from rice or nuts (such as almonds) or nondairy creamer.


• Milk should be fluid milk.
• Breads and grains should be made from whole-grain or enriched meal or flour.
• Cereal should be whole grain or enriched or fortified.
Best Practice Suggestion (continued)

- Vegetable or fruit juices should be 100% vegetable or fruit juice when used to meet a serving from the vegetable or fruit group.
- Children under one year old should not be offered unpasteurized or raw honey because it may contain spores that pose a health risk.

Food Allergies

A food allergy is caused by the body’s immune system reacting inappropriately to a food or food additive. Symptoms may include wheezing, difficulty breathing, diarrhea, rashes, itching, hives, and headaches. Food allergies are most common in infants, due to their immature digestive systems. Food allergies are usually outgrown during the preschool years. Although any food may cause an allergic reaction, six foods are responsible for most of these reactions in children. These foods are:

- Peanuts;
- Eggs;
- Milk;
- Tree nuts;
- Soy; and
- Wheat.

A child who is pregnant or breastfeeding should avoid consuming peanuts and peanut products due to its association with the development of peanut allergies in infants. It is best not to offer children under two to three years old peanuts or peanut products, such as peanut butter and foods containing or cooked in peanut oil, because of the potential of developing this life-threatening and often life-long allergy. Foods that cause allergic reactions should be eliminated from the diet. However, it is important that the diet still contain a variety of foods for healthy growth and development. A child should receive a medical evaluation if food allergies are suspected. If the child’s licensed physician determines that the child has a food allergy, a determination should be made of whether the child’s allergic condition meets USDA’s definition of disability.

Food Intolerance

A food intolerance is an adverse food-induced reaction that does not involve the body’s immune system. Lactose intolerance is one example of food intolerance. A person with lactose intolerance lacks an enzyme needed to digest milk sugar. When that person eats milk products, gas, bloating, and abdominal pain may occur. It is best to provide food substitutions for children with food intolerances who cannot consume the regular meal.

(\text{http://www.fns.usda.gov/tn/Resources/blocks1.pdf} - pg. 18)

Choking

Research has shown that 90% of fatal choking occurs in children younger than four years old. Examples of foods that present a risk of choking include hot dogs sliced into rounds, whole grapes, hard candy, nuts, seeds, raw peas, dried fruit, pretzels, chips, peanuts, popcorn, marshmallows, spoonfuls of peanut butter, and chunks of meat larger than can be swallowed whole.
§748.1695. What are the specific requirements for feeding an infant?

Subchapter J, Child Care
Division 7, Nutrition and Hydration
January 2007

(a) You must feed the infant:

Medium-High (1) On demand following the infant’s lead on when to feed, how long to feed, and how much to feed; and

Medium-High (2) Based on the recommendation of the infant’s licensed physician, who must approve you giving the infant any milk other than fortified formula.

(b) You must hold the infant while feeding him if the infant is:

Medium-High (1) Birth through six months old; or

Medium-High (2) Unable to sit unassisted in a high chair or other seating equipment during feeding.

Medium-High (c) You must never prop a bottle by supporting it with something other than the child or adult’s hand.

(d) If you care for more than one infant, you must:

Medium-High (1) Label each bottle and training cup with the child’s first name and initial of last name;

Medium-High (2) Not permit the infant to share bottles or training cups; and

Medium-High (3) Sanitize high chair trays before each use.

Best Practice Suggestion

Best practice suggests:

- Feeding infants while infants are awake;
- Providing regular snack and meal times for infants who eat table food; and
- Ensuring children no longer being held for feeding are fed in a safe manner.

(continued)
### Best Practice Suggestion (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infant’s age</th>
<th>Breakfast</th>
<th>Lunch and Supper</th>
<th>Snack</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Birth through three months:</td>
<td>4 to 6 oz. of iron fortified infant formula</td>
<td>4 to 6 oz. of iron fortified infant formula</td>
<td>4 to 6 oz. of iron fortified infant formula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serve liquids only</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four months through seven months:</td>
<td>• 4 to 8 oz. of iron fortified infant formula</td>
<td>• 4 to 8 oz. of iron fortified infant formula</td>
<td>4 to 6 oz. of iron fortified infant formula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add semisolid foods</td>
<td>• 0 to 3 tablespoons of iron fortified infant cereal</td>
<td>• 0 to 3 tablespoons of iron fortified infant cereal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eight months through eleven months:</td>
<td>• 6 to 8 oz. of iron fortified infant formula</td>
<td>• 6 to 8 oz. of iron fortified infant formula</td>
<td>• 2 to 4 oz. of iron fortified infant formula or 100% fruit juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add modified table foods</td>
<td>• 2 to 4 tablespoons of iron fortified infant cereal</td>
<td>• 2 to 4 tablespoons of iron fortified infant cereal, and/or</td>
<td>• 0 to 1/2 slice of soft bread, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 to 4 tablespoons of strained fruit and/or strained vegetables</td>
<td>• 1 to 4 tablespoons strained meat, fish, or poultry, mashed egg yolk, or mashed cooked dry beans or peas, or</td>
<td>• 0 to 2 crackers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/2 to 2 oz. of Cottage cheese, yogurt, or cheese, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 to 4 tablespoons mashed or diced soft fruit or mashed or soft cooked vegetables</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Best Practice Suggestion (continued)

An infant who is hungry may wake and toss, suck on his or her fist, cry or fuss, or look like he or she is going to cry. It is best to respond to early signs of hunger rather than waiting until the infant is upset and crying hard from hunger. (Feeding Infants: A Guide for Use in the Child Nutrition Programs p.33)

Signs of fullness include the infant sealing his or her lips together, decreased sucking, spitting out the nipple, turning away from the bottle, or pushing the bottle away.

§748.1697. What are the specific requirements for feeding toddlers and older children?

Subchapter J, Child Care
Division 7, Nutrition and Hydration
January 2007

(a) A toddler or older child must eat meals in the dining areas unless the service planning team’s recommendations are to the contrary.

(b) Food service practices for children receiving treatment services for primary medical needs or mental retardation, including non-mobile children, must encourage self-help and development.

Best Practice Suggestion

The daily food needs for children 12 months through 23 months are included in the following chart:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Food Groups</th>
<th>Number of Servings to Meet 1/3 of Daily Needs</th>
<th>Number of Servings to Meet Daily Needs</th>
<th>Serving Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Milk, Yogurt, and Cheese</td>
<td>1 and 1/3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>• 4 oz. Milk or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/2 oz. Cheese or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 4 oz. Yogurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meat, Poultry, Fish, Dry</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>• 1/2 to 1 oz. Cooked meat or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beans, Eggs, and Nuts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/2 to 1 Egg or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/2 c. Cooked beans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetables and Fruit</td>
<td>1 and 1/3 +</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>• 2 to 3 Tb. Cooked vegetables of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 2 to 3 Tb. Canned fruit or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/4 to 1/2 Small fresh fruit or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/4 to 1/2 c. Juice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Best Practice Suggestion (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Food Groups</th>
<th>Number of Servings to Meet 1/3 of Daily Needs</th>
<th>Number of Servings to Meet Daily Needs</th>
<th>Serving Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bread, Cereal, Rice, and Pasta</td>
<td>1 and 1/3 +</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>• 1/2 Slice Bread or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/4 to 1/2 c. Cooked Cereal or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 4 oz. To 1/3 c. Pasta or Rice or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 or 2 Crackers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The daily food needs for children two years through five years old are included in the following chart:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Food Groups</th>
<th>Number of Servings to Meet 1/3 of Daily Needs</th>
<th>Number of Servings to Meet Daily Needs</th>
<th>Serving Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Milk, Yogurt, and Cheese</td>
<td>2/3 of one serving</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>• 1 c. Milk or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 2 oz. Cheese or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 c. Yogurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meat, Poultry, Fish, Dry Beans,</td>
<td>2/3 of one serving</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>• 2 &amp; 1/2 oz. Cooked meat or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eggs, and Nuts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 Egg or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/2 c. Cooked beans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetable</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>• 1/2 c. Raw or cooked vegetables of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 c. Raw leafy vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Another vegetable should be offered to a child when dried peas or beans are counted as a meat alternative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td>2/3 of one serving</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>• 1/2 c. Canned or chopped fruit or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 Piece fruit or melon wedge or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/4 c. Dried fruit or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 3/4 c. Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bread, Cereal, Rice, and Pasta</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>• 1 Slice Bread or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/2 c. Cooked Cereal or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 oz. Ready to eat cereal or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/2 c. Cooked pasta or Rice or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 3 to 5 Crackers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
**Best Practice Suggestion (continued)**

The daily food needs for children six years old and older are included in the following chart:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Food Groups</th>
<th>Number of Servings to Meet 1/3 of Daily Needs</th>
<th>Number of Servings to Meet Daily Needs</th>
<th>Serving Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Milk, Yogurt, and Cheese</td>
<td>2/3 to 1</td>
<td>2 to 3</td>
<td>• 1 c. Milk, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 c. Yogurt, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 &amp; 1/2 oz. Natural cheese, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 2 oz. Processed cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>* Teenagers and young adults should have at least 3 servings of milk or dairy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>products.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meat, Poultry, Fish, Dry Beans,</td>
<td>2/3 to 1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>• 3 oz. Cooked meat, poultry, or fish, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eggs, and Nuts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 egg or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/2 c. Cooked dry beans, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/2 c. Tofu, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 2 Tb. Peanut butter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetable</td>
<td>1 to 1 and 2/3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>• 1/2 c. Raw or cooked vegetables, of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 c. Raw leafy vegetable, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 3/4 c. vegetable juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Another vegetable should be offered to a child when dried peas or beans are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>counted as a meat alternative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td>2/3 to 1 and 1/3</td>
<td>2 to 4</td>
<td>• 1 medium piece of fruit, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/2 c. Canned, chopped, or cooked fruit, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/4 c. Dried fruit or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 3/4 c. Fruit juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bread, Cereal, Rice, and Pasta</td>
<td>2 to 3 and 2/3</td>
<td>6 to 11</td>
<td>• 1 slice bread, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 oz. Ready-to-eat cereal or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/2 c. Cooked Cereal or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 1/2 c. Cooked pasta or Rice or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 4 to 6 Crackers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
**Best Practice Suggestion (continued)**

Most teenage boys will need to eat the higher number of servings from each food group, and teenage girls who participate in vigorous sports may need to eat a higher number of servings. It is best to serve enough food to allow these children second servings from the vegetable, fruit, grain, and milk groups and have snacks available if the child becomes hungry.

Best practice suggests that snacks be nutritious and include at least one of the following, which can be included in the child’s daily food needs:

- One serving from the fruit or vegetable group;
- One serving from the milk group;
- One serving from the grain group; or
- One serving from the meat or meat alternative group.

§748.1699. What must I do if a child refuses to or cannot eat a meal or snack that I offer?

Subchapter J, Child Care
Division 7, Nutrition and Hydration
January 2007

Medium-High (a) You must offer a child a meal or snack according to this division, but you may not force the child to eat. You are not required to offer other food to a child who:

1. Refuses a meal or snack; or
2. Chooses not to be present when a meal or snack is scheduled.

Medium-Low (b) You must discuss recurring eating problems with the child’s parent.

Medium (c) If a meal or snack is not appropriate to meet a child’s individual needs, for example food allergies or religious reasons, then you must offer the child an appropriate nutritional substitute.

§748.1701. What must I do if a child requires a therapeutic or special diet?

Subchapter J, Child Care
Division 7, Nutrition and Hydration
January 2007

Medium-High (a) To serve a therapeutic or special diet to a child, you must have written approval in the child’s record from a licensed physician or a registered or licensed dietitian.

(b) If a child requires a therapeutic or special diet, you must give the following people information regarding the diet:

Medium

1. All employees who prepare and serve food; and

Medium

2. The child’s caregivers.

Medium (c) You must make dietary alternatives available to a child who has special health needs.
§748.1703. What are the requirements for daily menus?

Low (a) You must maintain daily menus showing all meals and snacks that you prepare and serve.

Low (b) You must document food substitutions on the menu. Food substitutions must be of comparable food value.

Low (c) You must date menus and keep copies for 90 days.

(no weight) (d) This rule does not apply to meals prepared and served in cottage homes.

§748.1705. What are the nutrition requirements for a child with primary medical needs?

Medium-High (a) You must feed a child with primary medical needs according to his medical and developmental needs.

Medium-High (b) A licensed physician must prescribe tube feeding. A dietitian or physician must plan the diet that the physician prescribes.

Medium-High (c) Children must eat in an upright position unless the service planning team recommendations are to the contrary.

§748.1707. What are the requirements for tube-feeding formula?

Medium-High (a) A registered or licensed dietitian, physician, or a registered nurse must ensure the caregiver that prepares the formula is adequately trained and has demonstrated competency in preparing the formula.

Medium-High (b) Tube feeding formulas must supply the recommended dietary allowance for each child.

Medium-High (c) You must prepare and store the formula:

(1) According to directions; or

(2) As prescribed by a health-care professional.
§748.1709. What are the requirements for using a nasogastric tube to feed a child?  

Subchapter J, Child Care  
Division 7, Nutrition and Hydration  
January 2007

(a) Only the following may insert a nasogastric tube:
   (1) A physician; or
   (2) A registered nurse according to a physician’s written orders.

(b) You must document each insertion in the child’s record. The documentation for each insertion must include the:
   (1) Signature of the nurse who inserted the tube; and
   (2) Date of the insertion.

(c) You must follow the physician’s written orders concerning the tube.

Division 8, Additional Requirements for Infant Care

§748.1741. What do certain words mean in this division?  

Subchapter J, Child Care  
Division 8, Additional Requirements for Infant Care  
January 2007

(1) Baby bungee jumper – A bucket seat that is suspended from a doorway by an elastic bungee cord that allows an infant to bounce while sitting in the seat.

(2) Baby walker – A baby walker allows an infant to sit inside the walker equipped with rollers or wheels and move across the floor.

(3) Bouncer seat – A stationary seat designed to provide gentle rocking or bouncing motion by an infant’s movement, or by battery-operated movement. This type of equipment is designed for an infant’s use from birth until the child can sit up unassisted.

§748.1743. What are the basic care requirements for an infant?  

Subchapter J, Child Care  
Division 8, Additional Requirements for Infant Care  
January 2007

(a) Each infant must receive individual attention, including playing, talking, cuddling, and holding.

(b) When an infant is upset, a caregiver must hold and comfort the infant.

(c) A caregiver must provide prompt attention to an infant’s physical needs, such as feeding and diapering.

(continued)
(d) An infant’s caregiver must ensure that the environment is safe. For example, the caregiver must free the area of objects that may choke or harm the infant, take measures to prevent electric shock, free the area of furniture that is in disrepair or unstable, and allow no unsupervised access to water to prevent the risk of drowning.

(e) An infant’s caregiver must never leave the infant unsupervised. A sleeping infant is considered supervised if the caregiver is within eyesight or hearing range of the child and can intervene as needed, or if the caregiver uses a video camera or audio monitoring device to monitor the child and is close enough to the child to intervene as needed.

§748.1745. What steps must a caregiver follow when changing a child’s diaper?

A caregiver must:

(1) Promptly change soiled or wet diapers or clothing;

(2) Thoroughly cleanse children with individual cloths or disposable towels;

(3) Use a clean, individual cloth or disposable towel to dry the child;

(4) Ensure that the child is dry before placing a new diaper on the child; and

(5) Keep all diaper-changing supplies out of children’s reach.

§748.1747. What must I do to prevent the spread of germs when diapering children?

To prevent the spread of germs when diapering a child, you must:

(1) Wash your hands with soap and running water before and after diapering a child;

(2) Cover a container used for soiled diapers or keep it in a sanitary manner, such as placing soiled diapers in individual sealed bags;

(3) Discard a disposable towel after use; and

(4) Launder any cloth before reusing it.
§748.1749. What furnishings and equipment must I have in my infant care area?  
**Subchapter J, Child Care**  
**Division 8, Additional Requirements for Infant Care**  
**January 2007**

Your infant care area must at a minimum include the following furnishings and equipment:

- **Medium**  
  (1) An individual crib for each infant; and

- **Medium-Low**  
  (2) A sufficient number of toys to keep each child engaged in activities.

§748.1751. What specific safety requirements must my cribs meet?  
**Subchapter J, Child Care**  
**Division 8, Additional Requirements for Infant Care**  
**December 2012**

(a) All cribs must have:

- **Medium-High**  
  (1) A firm, flat mattress that snugly fits the sides of the crib. The mattress must not be supplemented with additional foam material or pads;

- **Medium-High**  
  (2) Sheets that fit snugly and do not present an entanglement hazard;

- **Medium-High**  
  (3) A mattress that is waterproof or washable;

- **Medium-High**  
  (4) Secure mattress support hangers, and no loose hardware or improperly installed or damaged parts;

- **Medium-High**  
  (5) A maximum of 2 3/8 inches between crib slats or poles;

- **Medium-High**  
  (6) No corner posts over 1/16 inch above the end panels;

- **Medium-High**  
  (7) No cutout areas in the headboard or footboard that would entrap a child’s head or body;

- **High**  
  (8) Drop gates, if present, which fasten securely and cannot be opened by a child; and

- **High**  
  (9) Documentation that each crib meets the applicable federal rules at Title 16, Code of Federal Regulations, Parts 1219 or 1220, concerning “Safety Standards for Full-Size Baby Cribs” and “Safety Standards for Non-Full-Size Baby Cribs,” respectively, or documentation that each crib is a medical device listed and registered with the U.S. Food and Drug Administration.

(b) You must sanitize each crib when soiled and before reassigning the crib to a different child.

(c) You must never leave a child in the crib with the drop gate down.

(d) You may not have stackable cribs.

(continued)
• Research shows more babies die in incidents involving cribs than with any other piece of nursery equipment.
• If a soda can fits easily between the slats on a crib, the slats are too wide.
• A mattress is too loose if there are more than two finger widths between the edge of the mattress and the crib side.
• Cribs manufactured before 06/28/2011 may not meet the safety standards established by the Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC).
• Documentation that you may use to verify your crib is in compliance with CPSC regulations includes the certificate of compliance, registration card, or tracking label. You may request this documentation from the manufacturer or retailer.
  • The certificate of compliance is a document that describes the crib and whether the crib complies with 16 CFR 1219 or 16 CFR 1220. The certificate includes the contact information for the importer or domestic manufacturer and the testing lab. It also lists the date and location of manufacture and testing.
  • The registration card is a postage-paid form provided by the crib manufacturer. The card includes the manufacturer’s name and contact information, model name, model number, and the date of manufacture.
  • The tracking label is attached to the crib and contains basic information such as the date of manufacture and the source of the crib.
  • You may find additional guidance on obtaining supporting documentation for your cribs on the CPSC website at http://www.cpsc.gov.
• In order to maintain the required documentation for each crib consider developing a system to easily tie the required documentation to the appropriate crib. Examples may include photographs of each crib attached to the documentation or a tracking sheet that includes information such as the date of purchase, manufacturer and model number, date of manufacture, and what documentation is on file (certificate of compliance, tracking label, or registration card).
• A crib that meets the definition of “device” in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. § 201(h)) is subject to regulation by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), not CPSC. A crib that is not a “device” is subject to CPSC’s crib standards. If your crib is a medical device, the manufacturer must be registered with the FDA. For additional information, visit the FDA website at http://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/DeviceRegulationandGuidance/HowtoMarketYourDevice/RegistrationandListing/default.htm
§748.1753. Are mesh cribs or port-a-cribs allowed?

You may use a full-size, portable, or mesh-side crib if:

1. You follow the manufacturer’s instructions;
2. The crib has:
   a. Mesh that is securely attached to top rail, side rail, and floor plate; and
   b. Folded sides that securely latch in place when raised; and
3. You never leave a child in a mesh-sided crib with a side folded down.

If you become aware of a recall for the port-a-crib used, you must discontinue its use.

Best Practice Suggestion

It is a good idea for the crib to have:
- A minimum height of 22 inches from the top of the railing to the mattress support at its lowest level; and
- Mesh openings that are 1/4 inch or less.

§748.1755. What equipment must have safety straps before I can use it with an infant?

If you use a high chair, swing, stroller, infant carrier, rocker, bouncer seat, or a similar type of equipment for an infant:

1. It must be equipped with safety straps; and
2. The safety straps must be fastened whenever the infant is using the equipment.
§748.1757. What types of equipment are not allowed for use with infants?

(a) You may not use any of the following types of equipment with infants:

- **Medium-High (1)** Baby walkers;
- **Medium-High (2)** Baby bungee jumpers;
- **Medium-High (3)** Accordion safety gates; and
- **High (4)** Toys that are small enough to swallow or choke a child.

(b) Children may not sleep on beanbags, waterbeds, or foam pads.

(c) You may not use soft or loose bedding, such as blankets, sleep positioning devices, stuffed toys, quilts, pillows, bumper pads, and comforters in a crib for an infant younger than 12 months of age.

**Helpful Information**

- Baby walkers present a hazard due to risk of falls down stairs, steps, and tipping over thresholds or carpet edges. They provide infants accessibility to potentially hot surfaces, containers of hot liquids such as coffee, dangling appliance cords, poisonous plants or hazardous substances and buckets, toilets or other containers of water.
- Baby bungee jumpers present a hazard due to increased risk of injury to the child as a result of spinning, swinging, or bumping into walls while placed in the jumper.
- Accordion gates with large V-shaped openings along the top edge and diamond shaped openings between the slats present entrapment and entanglement hazards resulting in strangulation, choking or pinching to children who try to crawl through or over the gate.
- Examples of items that present a choking hazard for infants and toddlers include coins, balloons, safety pins, marbles, Styrofoam and similar products, and anything that can fit into the inside tube of a toilet-paper roll.
- Studies on SIDS support eliminating soft bedding materials, sleep positioning devices, and stuffed toys used for children under twelve months old.
- Examples of items that can be used as alternatives to blankets and sheets are a one-piece footed sleeper, a body shirt or undershirt underneath a sleeper, sleep sack or wearable blanket that zips up the front and can be worn over a sleeper. Wearable blankets are sleeveless, so a baby can still move his arms around while the rest of his body stays covered.

The prohibited equipment is not safe or beneficial to an infant's development and is not recommended by either the American Academy of Pediatrics or the Consumer Product Safety Commission.
§748.1759. What activities must I provide for infants?

You must provide the following activities for an infant:

1. Multiple opportunities each day to explore in a safe and clean area that is outside the crib or other confining equipment;
2. Opportunities for visual, auditory, and sensory stimulation;
3. Opportunities for small- and large-muscle development; and
4. A supervised nap period that allows the infant to maintain the child’s own pattern of sleeping and waking.

§748.1761. How long may an infant remain in a crib after awakening?

An infant may remain in the crib or other confining equipment for up to 30 minutes after awakening, as long as the infant is content and responsive.

§748.1763. Are infants required to sleep on their backs?

Yes. You must place an infant not yet able to turn over on his own in a face-up sleeping position unless a health-care professional orders otherwise.

§748.1765. If an infant has difficulty falling asleep, may the infant’s head or crib be covered?

No. An infant must not have his head, face, or crib covered at any time by an item such as a blanket, linen, or clothing.
Division 9, Additional Requirements for Toddler Care

§748.1791. What are the basic care requirements for a toddler?

(a) Each toddler must receive individual attention, including playing, talking, and cuddling.

(b) A toddler’s caregiver must ensure that the environment is safe. For example, the caregiver must free the area of objects that may choke or harm the infant, take measures to prevent electric shock, free the area of furniture that is in disrepair or unstable, and allow no unsupervised access to water to prevent the risk of drowning.

(c) A toddler’s caregiver must never leave the toddler unsupervised. A sleeping toddler is considered supervised if the caregiver is within eyesight or hearing range of the child and can intervene as needed, or if the caregiver uses a video camera or audio monitoring device to monitor the child and is close enough to the child to intervene as needed.

§748.1793. What furnishings and equipment must I provide for toddlers?

Furnishings and equipment for toddlers must at a minimum include the following:

(1) Age-appropriate seating, tables, and nap and sleep equipment. Toddlers may use cribs or beds, as appropriate;

(2) Enough popular items available, so a toddler is not forced to compete for them; and

(3) Containers or low shelving, so items that can be safely used without direct supervision are accessible to children.
§748.1795. What activities must I provide for toddlers?

You must provide the following activities for a toddler:

1. Daily opportunities for outdoor play, when weather permits;
2. Opportunities for thinking skills and sensory development;
3. Opportunities for small and large-muscle development;
4. Opportunities for language development;
5. Opportunities for social/emotional development;
6. Opportunities to develop self-help skills such as toileting, hand washing, and feeding; and
7. Supervised naptimes. You must provide a supervised sleep or rest period after the noon meal for all toddlers.

**Best Practice Suggestion**

Best practices for nap or rest time include the following:

- Schedule a supervised sleep or rest period after the noon meal for children 12 months of age or older or according to the child’s individual physical needs;
- Lighting should allow for visual supervision of the children;
- Limit the sleep or rest period to no more than three hours;
- Do not force children to sleep and do not put anything in or on a child’s head or body to force the child to rest or sleep;
- Allow each child who is awake after resting or sleeping for one hour to participate in an alternative, quiet activity until the nap/rest time is over for other children who may be resting; and
- Take a toddler who sleeps or rests in a crib out of the crib for other activities when the child awakens.
Division 10, Additional Requirements for Pregnant Children

Best Practice Suggestion

If you have a pregnant child in care in the final trimester of pregnancy, it is best to have a complete and sterile emergency obstetrical kit available in a designated location at your operation and when transporting the child.

A sterile emergency obstetrical kit should contain the following supplies:

- Pair of sterile exam gloves such as latex gloves;
- One disposable plastic apron;
- One plastic lined underpad;
- Three disposable towels;
- Two O.B. towelettes to wipe and clean the birth opening prior to delivery;
- Four sterile gauze sponges;
- Two sterile umbilical cord clamps to clamp the umbilical cord before cutting;
- One sterile disposable pair of scissors to cut the umbilical cord;
- One disposable bulb syringe for fluid removal from the infant’s mouth and throat;
- Receiving blanket;
- One plastic bag to hold the placenta for the hospital placenta examination;
- Two twist ties for use with the plastic bag; and
- One sterile O.B. pad for post delivery.

It is also advisable for your operation to have the following items easily accessible:

- An instruction manual for caregivers on emergency childbirth delivery;
- A clean sheet and/or blanket for the mother who is about to give birth to prevent hypothermia; and
- A clean knit infant cap to prevent hypothermia in a newborn infant.

§748.1821. What information must I provide a pregnant child regarding her pregnancy?

Subchapter J, Child Care

Division 10, Additional Requirements for Pregnant Children

September 2010

You must:

Medium (1) Ensure information, training, and counseling is available regarding health aspects of pregnancy, preparation for child birth, and recovery from child birth;

Medium (2) Ensure the pregnant child receives nutritional counseling and guidance that meets generally accepted standards, including nutrition during pregnancy, lactation, and foods to avoid; and

Medium (3) Inform the child, within seven days of admission or upon learning of the pregnancy, of her right to be free from pressure to get an abortion, relinquish her child for adoption, or to parent her child.
§748.1823. Is the use of emergency behavior intervention of a pregnant child permitted in my operation?

If your policies allow for the use of personal restraints on a pregnant child:

Medium-High
(1) The health-care professional attending to the child’s pregnancy must document whether any type of emergency behavior intervention that your policies allow is inadvisable; and

High
(2) You may not use any emergency behavior intervention that the child’s health-care professional attending to her pregnancy finds inadvisable.

§748.1825. If my policies permit the admission of adolescent parents with their child(ren), who is responsible for the care of the adolescent’s child(ren)?

If your policies permit the admission of adolescent parents with their child(ren):

Medium
(1) An adolescent parent must provide most of the care for her child;

Medium-High
(2) Caregivers must be available to the adolescent parent as a resource and support; and

Medium-High
(3) When you care for an adolescent’s child in the adolescent parent’s absence, you are responsible for that child as if the child is in your care.
Subchapter K, Operations That Provide Care for Children and Adults

Division 1, Scope

§748.1901. What operations do the rules in this subchapter apply to?

The rules in this subchapter apply to operations that provide care for both children and adults.

Division 2, General Requirements

§748.1931. After a child in my care turns 18 years old, may the person remain in my care?

(a) A young adult may remain in your care until his 23rd birthday in order to:
   (1) Transition to independence, including attending college or vocational or technical training;
   (2) Attend high school, a program leading to a high school diploma, or GED classes;
   (3) Complete your program; or
   (4) Stay with a minor sibling.

(b) A young adult who turns 18 in your care may remain in your care indefinitely if the person:
   (1) Continues to need the same level of care; and
   (2) Is unlikely to physically and/or intellectually progress over time.
§748.1933. May I admit a young adult into care?
Subchapter K, Operations That Provide Care for Children and Adults
Division 2, General Requirements
September 2010

(a) You may admit a young adult into your transitional living program.

(b) For other programs or services, the young adult must:
   (1) Come immediately from another residential child-care operation if the reason for admittance is consistent with a condition listed in §748.1931 of this title (relating to After a child in my care turns 18 years old, may the person remain in my care?); or
   (2) Be in the care of the Texas Department of Family and Protective Services.

(c) A young adult may remain in your care until his 23rd birthday.

§748.1935. How does the child/caregiver ratio apply if I provide care to both children and adults?
Subchapter K, Operations That Provide Care for Children and Adults
Division 2, General Requirements
January 2007

(a) If you provide care to both children and adults, you may maintain the required child/caregiver ratio by:
   (1) Counting all residents in your care as children and maintaining the appropriate ratio; or
   (2) Assigning caregivers to work exclusively with the children in care.

(b) The child/caregiver ratio for minor and adult residents applies to operation-sponsored activities or appointments, regardless of where they occur.

(c) You may not count adult residents as caregivers in the child/caregiver ratio.

§748.1937. May an adult in care share a bedroom with a child in care?
Subchapter K, Operations That Provide Care for Children and Adults
Division 2, General Requirements
September 2010

An adult in care may share a bedroom with a child in care if:

(1) A professional level service provider determines there are no risks to either of them after assessing the following:

(A) Their behaviors;
(B) Their compatibility with each other;
(C) Their respective relationships;
(D) Any past history of sexual trauma or sexually inappropriate behavior; and
(E) Appropriateness;

(continued)
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

(2) The assessment and approval by the professional level service provider is documented and dated in the child’s record; and

(3) Their age difference is less than two years.

§748.1939. How much general living space and floor space in a bedroom must I provide for children and young adults who are in my care?

Subchapter K, Operations That Provide Care for Children and Adults
Division 2, General Requirements
January 2007

For adult residents, you must meet the space requirements listed in §748.3351 of this title (relating to What are the requirements for general living space?) and §748.3357 of this title (relating to What are the requirements for floor space in a bedroom used by a child?).

§748.1941. What must I do if an adult resident is responsible for his own medication?

Subchapter K, Operations That Provide Care for Children and Adults
Division 2, General Requirements
January 2007

If an adult resident is responsible for his own medication, you must:

(1) Establish written safeguards to prevent children in care from having access to the medications; and

(2) Implement the safeguards.

§748.1943. Must adult residents have a tuberculosis (TB) examination?

Subchapter K, Operations That Provide Care for Children and Adults
Division 2, General Requirements
January 2007

Yes. You must meet applicable requirements listed in §748.1583 of this title (relating to Who must have a tuberculosis (TB) examination?).

§748.1945. What must I do if an adult resident has a positive tuberculosis test result?

Subchapter K, Operations That Provide Care for Children and Adults
Division 2, General Requirements
January 2007

You must meet applicable requirements listed in §748.1581 of this title (relating to What health precautions must I take if someone in my operation has a communicable disease?).
Subchapter L, Medication

Division 1, Administration of Medication

§748.2001. What consent must I obtain to administer medications?  
High  (a) You must obtain a general written consent to administer routine, preventive, and emergency medications.
High  (b) You must obtain a written, signed, and dated consent, specific to the psychotropic medication to be administered, from the person legally authorized to give medical consent before administering a new psychotropic medication to a child, per §748.2253 of this title (relating to If my operation employs or contracts with a health-care professional who prescribes psychotropic medications to a child in care, what information must I provide the person legally authorized to give consent before requesting his consent for the child to be placed on psychotropic medication?) or §748.2255 of this title (relating to If my operation does not employ or contract with a health-care professional who prescribes psychotropic medications to a child in care, what information must I provide the person legally authorized to give medical consent prior to the health-care professional prescribing psychotropic medications to a child in care?).

Best Practice Suggestion

The following are recommended before a health-care professional prescribes a psychotropic medication for a child in care:

• Develop clearly defined target symptoms and treatment goals for the child’s use of psychotropic medications.
• Ask the health-care professional to consider potential side effects for the child and evaluate the overall benefit-to-risk ratio of pharmacotherapy for the child.
• Consider the role of nonpharmacological interventions, except in urgent situations.
• Document appropriate monitoring of indices such as height, weight, blood pressure, or other medical/laboratory findings.
§748.2003. What medication requirements must my operation meet?

(a) To the best of your knowledge, you must inform the person legally authorized to give medical consent of the benefits, risks, and side effects of all prescription medication and treatment procedures used and the medical consequences of refusing them, and/or provide the name and telephone number of the prescribing health-care professional for more information.

(b) You must:

1. Be informed about possible side effects of medications administered to the child;
2. Store all medication in the original container unless you have an additional container with the same label and instructions;
3. Administer all medications according to the instructions on the label or according to a prescribing health-care professional’s subsequent signed orders (See §748.2005 of this title (relating to May I accept verbal orders on the administration of medication?));
4. Administer each child’s medication within one hour of preparation;
5. Ensure the child has taken the medication as prescribed;
6. Ensure a person trained in and authorized to administer prescription medication administers the medication to a child in care unless the child is on a self-medication program;
7. Maintain any documentation provided by the health-care professional on the administration of current prescription medication;
8. Not physically force a child to take prescription medication except as allowed by §748.2455(a)(2)(B) of this title (relating to What actions must a caregiver take before using a permitted type of emergency behavior intervention?);
9. Ensure that your employees do not provide any prescription medication or treatment to a child except on written orders of a health-care professional;
10. Not borrow or administer prescription medication to a child that is prescribed to another person; and
11. Not administer prescription medication to more than one child from the same container. Only the child for whom the prescription medication was prescribed may use the medication.
§748.2005. May I accept verbal orders on the administration of medication?

Medium-High (a) Assuming you have obtained written consent according to §748.2001 of this title (relating to What consent must I obtain to administer medications?), a licensed health-care professional may provide verbal orders. However, the health-care professional must write and sign orders within 72 hours of the verbal order.

Medium-High (b) The verbal order must be documented in the child’s record, including the health care professional’s name and the date and time of the call.

§748.2009. What are the requirements for administering nonprescription medication and vitamins?

High (a) You must follow the label and ensure the nonprescription medication is not contraindicated with any other medication prescribed to the child or the child’s medical conditions.

(no weight) (b) You may give nonprescription medication or vitamins to more than one child from one container.

Division 2, Self-Administration of Medication

§748.2051. What are the requirements for a self-medication program?

For a child to be on a self-medication program:

Medium (1) The child’s parent must give written authorization for the child to be on the program;

Medium (2) The child’s service plan must include the self-medication program and any requirements for caregiver supervision; and

Medium-High (3) The health-care professional who prescribed the medication must be consulted, and any concerns of the health-care professional documented in the child’s record.
§748.2053. Who must record the medication dosage if a child is on a self-medication program?

When a child who is on a self-medication program takes a dosage of the medication, the child may:

(1) Record the dosage if you have a system for reviewing the child’s medication each day; or

(2) Report the medication to an appropriate employee or service provider, who must then do the actual recording.

Division 3, Medication Storage and Destruction

§748.2101. What medication storage requirements must my operation meet?

You must:

(1) Store medication in a locked container;

(2) Keep medication inaccessible other than to employees responsible for stored medication;

(3) Ensure the medication storage area has a separate container where medications “for external use only” are stored separately from other medications;

(4) Store medication covered by Schedule II of the Texas Controlled Substances Act under double lock in a separate container. For example, a double lock can include a lock on the cabinet or filing cabinet and the door to the closet where medications are stored;

(5) Make provisions for storing medication that requires refrigeration;

(6) Keep medication storage area(s) clean and orderly;

(7) Remove discontinued medication immediately and destroy it in a way that ensures that children do not have access to it;

(8) Remove medication on or before the expiration date and destroy it in a way that ensures that children do not have access to it;

(9) Remove medication of a discharged or deceased child immediately and destroy it in a way that ensures that children do not have access to it; and

(10) Provide prescription medication to the person to whom a child is discharged or transferred if the child is taking the medication at that time.
§748.2103. What are the requirements for discontinued or expired medication?

Medium-High
(a) Discontinued medication, expired medication, and medication left at your operation must be inventoried and stored separately from current medications as directed by the administrator.

Medium
(b) When you have an accumulation of this medication, you must destroy the medication in accordance with state and federal law and in a way that ensures children do not have access to it. The medication must be destroyed by:

(1) A health-care professional or pharmacist; or

(2) The licensed child-care administrator and another adult who is not a resident.

Best Practice Suggestion

When medication is destroyed, it is a good idea to have the person(s) involved in the medication destruction sign a record that lists the following information:

• Name of the child to whom the medication was prescribed;
• Another form of identification for the child, such as a child’s file number;
• The prescription number and the name of the pharmacy;
• The name of the medication, strength, and quantity destroyed; and
• The date of destruction.

It is best to retain the record of destroyed medication at least one year from the date of destruction.

Division 4, Medication Records

§748.2151. What records must you maintain for each child receiving medication?

Medium-High
(a) You must maintain a cumulative record of all:

(1) Prescription medication dispensed to each child; and

(2) Nonprescription medication, excluding vitamins, dispensed to a child under five years old.
(b) You must maintain the medication record during the time that you provide services to the child. This record must include the:

1. Child’s full name;
2. Prescribing health-care professional’s name, if applicable;
3. Reason medication was prescribed, for prescription medication;
4. Medication name, strength, and dosage;
5. Date (day, month, and year) and time the medication was administered;
6. Name and signature of the person who administered the medication;
7. Child’s refusal to accept medication, if applicable;
8. Reasons for administering the medication, including the specific symptoms, condition, and/or injuries of the child that you are treating, only for:
   A. PRN psychotropic medications; and
   B. Nonprescription medications (excluding vitamins) for children under five years old.

(c) Unless you operate on a cottage home model, you must count each medication prescribed to a child at least daily and document the count. The medication count must match the medication documentation.

(d) Identification of any prohibited prescription medication, non-prescription medication, or vitamins for each child must be maintained in the medication record that must be incorporated into the child’s record.

(e) The medication records of prescription and applicable nonprescription medication dispensed to the child must be incorporated into the child’s record.

**Helpful Information**

*Documenting the time a medication is given:*

For medications with regularly scheduled doses, you may use the regularly scheduled time to document giving the medication as long as it is given within thirty minutes of the scheduled time. Otherwise, you must document the actual time the medication is given.

Example: For a regularly scheduled 9:00 a.m. medication given at 9:20, you may document 9:00 a.m.; if the medication is given at 9:45, then you must document 9:45 a.m.

If you document the time by initialing the regularly scheduled time (pre-printed on the form), there must be space on the form to document the time given when it is outside the 30-minute window.

For medications that are PRN or one-time only, you must document the exact time the medication is given.

(continued)
Helpful Information (continued)

Documenting the name and signature of the person who administered a medication:
The purpose of the signature is to be able to identify the person who administered a specific medication to a child, if a concern arises later about that medication. Licensing requires one full signature for each person who administers medication, but there is no need for the person to record a full signature for each dose of medication that he/she administers. Most medication records provide space for a signature and matching initials (usually at the bottom of the page or on the back), then only require a person to use his/her initials to record each time he/she actually gives a dose of medication. Using this system, the initials can be matched to the signature as needed. This complies with minimum standards.

Division 5, Medication and Label Errors

§748.2201. What is a medication error?  
Subchapter L, Medication  
Division 5, Medication and Label Errors  
January 2007

A medication error includes, but is not limited to, the following:

1. A child receives the wrong medication;
2. A child receives medication prescribed for someone else;
3. A child receives the wrong dosage of medication;
4. A child receives medication at the wrong time;
5. A medication dose is skipped or missed;
6. A child receives expired medication;
7. Not following the medication administration instructions, such as giving a child medication on an empty stomach when the medication should be given with food; and
8. A child receives medication that was not stored as required to maintain the effectiveness of the medication, such as refrigerating or not refrigerating the medication or exposing the medication to heat or sunlight.
§748.2203. What must I do if I find a medication error?

(a) If you find a medication error regarding a prescribed medication, you must contact a health-care professional immediately, unless the error is the type described in paragraph (4) or (5) of §748.2201 of this title (relating to What is a medication error?), and follow the health-care professional’s recommendations.

(b) If you find a medication error regarding an nonprescription medication, you must take the appropriate and necessary actions as required by the circumstances.

(c) For all medication errors, you must document the following within 24 hours:

1. The time and date of the error;
2. The medication error;
3. The time and date of the call(s) to the licensed health-care professional, if applicable;
4. The name and title of the health-care professional contacted, if applicable; and
5. The health-care professional’s medical recommendations for ensuring the child’s safety, if applicable.

§748.2205. What must I do if I find a medication label error?

If you find a medication label error, you must:

1. Report the error to the pharmacist; and
2. Have the label on the medication container corrected as soon as possible, but no later than the next business day.

Division 6, Side Effects and Adverse Reactions to Medication

§748.2231. What must I do if a child has an adverse reaction to a medication?

If a child has an adverse reaction to a medication, you must:

1. Immediately report the reaction to a health-care professional;
2. Follow the health-care professional’s recommendations;
3. Seek further medical care for the child if the child’s condition appears to worsen; and

(continued)
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

§748.2233. What must I do if a child experiences side effects from any medications?

Subchapter L, Medication
Division 6, Side Effects and Adverse Reactions to Medication
January 2007

If a child experiences side effects from any medication, the caregiver must:

Medium-High (1) Document the observed and reported side effects;
Medium-High (2) Immediately report any serious side effects to the child’s physician; and
Medium-High (3) Report any other side effect to the prescribing physician within 72 hours.

Division 7, Use of Psychotropic Medication

§748.2253. If my operation employs or contracts with a health-care professional who prescribes psychotropic medications to a child in care, what information must I provide the person legally authorized to give consent before requesting his consent for the child to be placed on psychotropic medication?

Subchapter L, Medication
Division 7, Use of Psychotropic Medication
January 2007

Medium-High (a) Before requesting the person’s written consent to give the child psychotropic medication, the prescribing health-care professional must give the following in writing or document a discussion with the person or a combination of both:

Medium-High (1) The child’s diagnosis;
Medium-High (2) The nature of the child’s mental illness or condition;
Medium-High (3) An explanation of the purpose of the medication;
Medium (4) A description of the benefits expected;
Medium-High (5) A description of any accompanying discomforts and risks, including those which could result from long-term use of the medication, and possible side effects, including side effects that are known to frequently occur in persons, side effects to which the child may be predisposed, and the nature and possible occurrence of irreversible symptoms;
Medium-High (6) A statement of whether the medication is habituating in nature;

(continued)
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

Medium-High (7) Alternative interventions to the use of psychotropic medication that have been attempted and that have been unsuccessful;

Medium-High (8) Other alternative treatments or procedures to the use of the psychotropic medication;

Medium-High (9) Risks and benefits of the alternative treatments or procedures;

Medium-High (10) Risks and benefits of not receiving or undergoing a treatment or procedure;

Medium-High (11) An explanation that the person legally authorized to give medical consent may ask questions about the child’s response to the medication, and may review your daily records on request; and

Medium-High (12) An explanation that the person legally authorized to give medical consent may withdraw consent and request the medication be discontinued at any time.

Medium-High (b) The health-care professional must offer to answer any questions the person legally authorized to give consent has about the medication.

Medium-High (c) The person must sign a consent form that acknowledges that you have provided all of the information set forth in subsection (a) of this section. A copy of this signed consent form must be filed in the child’s record.

§748.2255. If my operation does not employ or contract with a health-care professional who prescribes psychotropic medications to a child in care, what information must I provide the person legally authorized to give medical consent prior to the health-care professional prescribing psychotropic medications to a child in care?

Subchapter L, Medication
Division 7, Use of Psychotropic Medication
January 2007

If you are requesting consent and the person legally authorized to give consent is not privy to this information, you must:

Medium-High (1) Before requesting the person’s written consent to give the child psychotropic medication, provide information in writing or document a discussion with the person regarding:

Medium-High (A) The nature of the child’s mental illness or condition;

Medium-High (B) A general explanation of the purpose of the medication;

Medium (C) A general description of the benefits expected;

Medium-High (D) An explanation that the person may ask questions about the child’s response to the medication; and

Medium-High (E) An explanation that the person may withdraw medical consent and request the medication be discontinued at any time.

(continued)
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

(2) Offer to answer any questions the person legally authorized to give medical consent has about the medication and/or provide the name and telephone number of the prescribing health-care professional for further information.

(3) Obtain a signed consent form from the person legally authorized to give medical consent that acknowledges that you have provided all of the information set forth in paragraph (1) of this section. A copy of this signed consent form must be filed in the child’s record.

§748.2257. What are the requirements if a physician orders administration of a psychotropic medication to a child in an emergency?

(a) If a physician has made a determination that there is an emergency according to §266.009 of the Family Code and the emergency requires the administration of a psychotropic medication, then you must follow the physician’s orders and do not have to obtain consent prior to the administration of the medication.

(b) Within 72 hours after you have administered the medication, you must notify the parent and the person legally authorized to give medical consent.

(c) The physician’s statement regarding the emergency and the prescription must be documented in the child’s record.

§748.2259. What information must I document about a child’s use of psychotropic medication?

(a) You must maintain a daily record of the child’s use of such medication according to the requirements in §748.2151 of this title (relating to What records must I maintain for each child receiving medication?).

(b) You must document in the child’s record a description of any noticeable change in the child’s behavior in response to the medication.

(c) You must provide the information in subsection (b) of this section to the prescribing health-care professional or the child’s current health-care professional to use in evaluating the appropriateness of continuing the medication. You must document the health-care professional’s evaluation and review in the child’s record.
§748.2261. If my operation employs or contracts with a health-care professional who prescribes psychotropic medications to a child in care, what are the requirements for evaluating whether a child should continue taking a psychotropic medication?

Subchapter L, Medication
Division 7, Use of Psychotropic Medication
January 2007

(a) If a child takes psychotropic medications, the prescribing health-care professional must evaluate and document in the child’s medication record a description of the child’s response to the medication and an assessment of its effectiveness and the appropriateness of continuing the medication at least quarterly. The written evaluation must include any reasons for discontinuing the medication.

(b) If the health-care professional decides that he can evaluate the appropriateness of continuing the medication without seeing the child, you do not have to schedule an appointment for the evaluation.

(c) The health-care professional must consider the target symptoms and treatment goals in evaluating the child’s use of psychotropic medications.

(d) The health-care professional must document whether the child needs to continue taking the medication. You must document the health-care professional’s decision in the child’s record.

(e) If the health-care professional does not substantiate the effectiveness of a specific psychotropic medication within 90 days, the health-care professional must provide a written rationale for continuing the medication for an additional period. The continuation of the medication may not exceed an additional 90 days (for a total of 180 days) if effectiveness is not substantiated by the health-care professional. A copy of the written rationale must be documented in the child’s record.
Subchapter M, Discipline and Punishment

§748.2301. What are the requirements for disciplinary measures?

(a) Only a caregiver known to and knowledgeable of a child may discipline the child.

(b) Each disciplinary measure must:

1. Be consistent with your policies and procedures;
2. Not be physically or emotionally damaging to the child;
3. Be individualized to meet each child’s needs;
4. Be appropriate to the child’s level of understanding, age, and developmental level; and
5. Be appropriate to the incident and severity of the behavior demonstrated.

(c) The goal of each disciplinary measure must be to teach the child acceptable behavior and self-control. The caregiver must explain the reason for the disciplinary measure when the caregiver imposes the measure.

Best Practice Suggestion

It is a good idea for disciplinary measures to be consistent among caregivers. Using positive methods of discipline and guidance encourage self-esteem, self-control, and self-direction. Positive methods of discipline include the following:

- Using praise, positive reinforcement, and encouragement of good behavior instead of focusing only on unacceptable behavior;
- Reminding a child of behavior expectations daily by using clear, positive statements;
- Talking with the child about the situation;
- Focusing on the rule to learn and the reason for the rule;
- Focusing on solutions that are respectful, reasonable, and related to the problem behavior, rather than blaming or focusing on consequences;
- Redirecting the child’s attention or behavior using positive statements;
- Providing prior notice of possible consequences for inappropriate behaviors;
- Giving the child acceptable choices or alternatives;
- Using brief supervised separation or time away from the group or situation, when appropriate for the child’s understanding, age, and development. Best practice suggests that quiet time or time out from the group be limited to no more than one minute per year of the child’s chronological or developmental age. However, this time frame may need to be adjusted for some children, such as a child who has attention-deficit disorder. Time out is not appropriate for infants and is not recommended for toddlers, since they are too young to understand this intervention;

(continued)
**Best Practice Suggestion (continued)**

- Arranging the environment to allow safe testing of limits;
- Using kind but firm action;
- Giving logical consequences that are appropriate to the situation and severity of the behavior; and
- Withholding privileges.

§748.2303. May I use corporal punishment for children in care?  
Subchapter M, Discipline and Punishment  
January 2007

(a) You may not use or threaten to use corporal punishment with any child in care.

(b) Corporal punishment is the infliction of physical pain on any part of a child’s body as a means of controlling or managing the child’s behavior. It includes:

1. Hitting or spanking a child with a hand or instrument; or
2. Forcing or requiring the child to do any of the following as a method of managing or controlling behavior:
   A. Perform any form of physical exercise, such as running laps or doing sit-ups or push-ups;
   B. Hold a physical position, such as kneeling or squatting; or
   C. Do any form of “unproductive work.”

§748.2305. What is “unproductive work”?  
Subchapter M, Discipline and Punishment  
January 2007

(a) “Unproductive work” is work that serves no purpose except to demean the child. Examples include moving rocks or logs from one pile to another or digging a hole and then filling it in. Unproductive work is never an appropriate behavior management tool.

(b) “Unproductive work” does not include work that corrects damage that the child’s behavior caused. For example, you may require a child who defaces a fence or wall to repaint it. This example includes a logical consequence and is an acceptable behavior management tool.
§748.2307. What other methods of punishment are prohibited?

In addition to corporal punishment, prohibited discipline techniques include:

1. Any harsh, cruel, unusual, unnecessary, demeaning, or humiliating discipline or punishment;
2. Denial of mail or visits with their families as discipline or punishment;
3. Threatening with the loss of placement as discipline or punishment;
4. Using sarcastic or cruel humor, and verbal abuse;
5. Maintaining an uncomfortable physical position, such as kneeling, or holding his arms out;
6. Pinching, pulling hair, biting, or shaking a child;
7. Putting anything in or on a child’s mouth, such as soap or tape;
8. Humiliating, shaming, ridiculing, rejecting, or yelling at a child;
9. Subjecting a child to abusive or profane language;
10. Placing a child in a dark room, bathroom, or closet;
11. Requiring a child to remain silent or inactive for inappropriately long periods of time for the child’s age;
12. Confining a child to a highchair, box, or other similar furniture or equipment as discipline or punishment;
13. Denying basic child rights as discipline or punishment;
14. Withholding food that meets the child’s nutritional requirements; and
15. Using or threatening to use emergency behavior intervention as discipline or punishment.
§748.2309. To what extent may I restrict a child’s activities as a behavior management tool?

(a) Within limits, a caregiver may restrict a child’s activities as a behavior management tool.

(b) Restrictions of activities, other than school or chores, which will be imposed on a child for more than seven days, must have prior approval by the treatment director, service planning team, or professional level service provider.

(c) Restrictions to a particular room or building that will be imposed on a child for more than 24 hours must have prior approval by the treatment director, service planning team, or professional level service provider.

(d) You must inform the child and parent about any restrictions that you place on the child.

(e) Documentation of all approvals, justification for the restriction, and informing the child and parents must be in the child’s record.

§748.2311. May a child or adult in care discipline or punish another person in care?

No. A person in care must not discipline or punish another person in care.
Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention

Division 1, Definitions

§748.2401. What do certain words mean in this subchapter?

These words have the following meaning in this subchapter:

(1) Chemical restraint – A type of emergency behavior intervention that uses chemicals or pharmaceuticals through topical application, oral administration, injection, or other means to immobilize or sedate a child as a mechanism of control. The use of medications that have a secondary effect of immobilizing or sedating a child, but are prescribed by a treating health-care professional and administered solely for medical or dental reasons, is not chemical restraint and is not regulated as such under this chapter.

(2) De-escalation – See §748.43(13) of this title (relating to What do certain words and terms mean in this chapter?).

(3) Emergency behavior intervention – See §748.43(17) of this title.

(4) Emergency medication – A type of emergency behavior intervention that uses chemicals or pharmaceuticals through topical application, oral administration, injection, or other means to modify a child's behavior. The use of medications that have a secondary effect of modifying a child’s behavior, but are prescribed by a treating health-care professional and administered solely for medical or dental reasons (e.g. benadryl for an allergic reaction or medication to control seizures), is not emergency medication and is not regulated as such under this chapter.

(5) Emergency situation – A situation in which attempted preventative de-escalatory or redirection techniques have not effectively reduced the potential for injury and it is immediately necessary to intervene to prevent:

(A) Imminent probable death or substantial bodily harm to the child because the child attempts or continually threatens to commit suicide or substantial bodily harm; or

(B) Imminent physical harm to another because of the child’s overt acts, including attempting to harm others. These situations may include aggressive acts by the child, including serious incidents of shoving or grabbing others over their objections. These situations do not include verbal threats or verbal attacks.

(6) Mechanical restraint – A type of emergency behavior intervention that uses the application of a device to restrict the free movement of all or part of a child’s body in order to control physical activity.

(continued)
(7) Personal restraint – A type of emergency behavior intervention that uses the application of physical force without the use of any device to restrict the free movement of all or part of a child’s body in order to control physical activity. Personal restraint includes escorting, which is when a caregiver uses physical force to move or direct a child who physically resists moving with the caregiver to another location.

(8) PRN – See §748.43(38) of this title.

(9) Prone restraint – Placing a child in a chest down restraint hold.

(10) Seclusion – A type of emergency behavior intervention that involves the involuntary separation of a child from other residents and the placement of the child alone in an area from which the resident is prevented from leaving by a physical barrier, force, or threat of force.

(11) Short personal restraint – A personal restraint that does not last longer than one minute before the child is released.

(12) Supine restraint – Placing a child in a chest up restraint hold.

(13) Transitional hold – The use of a temporary restraint technique that lasts no longer than one minute as part of the continuation of a longer personal or mechanical restraint.

(14) Triggered review – A review of a specific child’s placement, treatment plan, and orders or recommendations for intervention, because a certain number of interventions have been made within a specified period of time (e.g. three seclusions within a seven-day period).

**Helpful Information**

The distinguishing variable between a PRN (as needed) psychotropic medication and an emergency medication is the circumstances under which the medication is given. A medication given to help a child manage his/her behavior or to de-escalate a child who is having trouble managing his/her behavior is regulated only as a PRN psychotropic medication. However, if the medication is given in response to an emergency situation, it is an emergency medication.

For example, a child becomes increasingly agitated after a family visit, to the point of screaming and becoming verbally abusive to caregivers and other children. The child is not able to use self-calming techniques. If the child is offered a PRN psychotropic medication under these circumstances, it is not regulated as emergency medication, because there is no emergency situation. The medication serves to help the child manage the behavior before it escalates into an emergency.

However, if the child had escalated to the point of physically assaulting someone and requiring physical restraint, then a medication offered during the restraint to help the child calm would be regulated as an emergency medication.
Division 2, Types of Emergency Behavior Intervention That May Be Administered

§748.2451. What types of emergency behavior intervention may I administer?  
Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention  
Division 2, Types of Emergency Behavior Intervention That May Be Administered  
January 2007

(a) If permitted in your policies and you meet the requirements of this subchapter, you may administer the following types of emergency behavior intervention to a child in your care:

- Medium-High (1) Short personal restraint;
- Medium-High (2) Personal restraint;
- Medium-High (3) Emergency medication;
- Medium-High (4) Seclusion:  
  - (A) Only for children with emotional disorders or pervasive developmental disorders; and only if you provide treatment services to 25 or more children with emotional disorders or pervasive developmental disorders, or if more than 30% of the children in your care receive treatment services for emotional disorders or pervasive development disorders. Seclusion is not permitted for children receiving therapeutic camp services; or
  - (B) Only if you provide emergency care services to the child and only while waiting for the arrival of law enforcement or emergency medical services; and
- Medium-High (5) Mechanical restraint, only if you have a Residential Treatment Center permit.

(b) You may never administer chemical restraints.

(c) Protective and supportive devices, used appropriately, are not considered emergency behavior interventions. For information on protective and supportive devices, see Divisions 4 and 5 of Subchapter J of this chapter (relating to Child Care).

§748.2453. Who may administer emergency behavior intervention?  
Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention  
Division 2, Types of Emergency Behavior Intervention That May Be Administered  
January 2007

High Only a caregiver qualified in emergency behavior intervention may administer any form of emergency behavior intervention, except for the short personal restraint of a child.
§748.2455. What actions must a caregiver take before using a permitted type of emergency behavior intervention?

(a) Before using a permitted type of emergency behavior intervention, the caregiver must:

1. Attempt less restrictive behavior interventions that prove to be ineffective at defusing the situation; and

2. Determine that the basis for the emergency behavior intervention is:
   (A) An emergency situation; or
   (B) A need for a personal restraint to administer intra-muscular medication or other medical treatments prescribed by a licensed physician, such as administering insulin to a child with diabetes.

(b) A child’s active attempt to run away may be considered an emergency situation when the following is a factor:

1. The child is developmentally or chronologically under six years old;
2. The child is suicidal;
3. The operation is located near a high traffic area;
4. Adverse weather conditions pose a clear safety risk to the child; or
5. Other clear safety risks are present.

§748.2459. What is the appropriate use for a short personal restraint?

Generally, a short personal restraint is used in urgent situations, such as:

1. To protect the child from external danger that causes imminent significant risk to the child, such as preventing the child from running into the street or coming into contact with a hot stove. The restraint must end immediately after the danger is averted;
2. To intervene when a child under five years old (chronological or developmental age) demonstrates disruptive behavior, if other efforts to de-escalate the child’s behavior have failed;
3. When a child over five years old demonstrates behavior disruptive to the environment or milieu, such as disrobing in public, provoking others that creates a safety risk, or to intervene to prevent a child from physically fighting; or
4. When a child is significantly damaging property, such as breaking car windows or putting holes into walls.
§748.2461. What precautions must a caregiver take when implementing a short personal restraint?

(a) When a caregiver implements a short personal restraint, the caregiver must:

High (1) Minimize the risk of physical discomfort, harm, or pain to the child; and
High (2) Use the minimal amount of reasonable and necessary physical force.

(b) A caregiver may not use any of the following techniques as a short personal restraint:

High (1) A prone or supine restraint;
High (2) Restraints that impair the child’s breathing by putting pressure on the child’s torso, including leaning a child forward during a seated restraint;
High (3) Restraints that obstruct the airways of the child or impair the breathing of the child, including procedures that place anything in, on, or over the child’s mouth, nose, or neck, or impede the child’s lungs from expanding;
High (4) Restraints that obstruct the caregiver’s view of the child’s face;
High (5) Restraints that interfere with the child’s ability to communicate or vocalize distress; or
High (6) Restraints that twist or place the child’s limb(s) behind the child’s back.

§748.2463. Are there any purposes for which emergency behavior intervention cannot be used?

Emergency behavior intervention may never be used as:

Medium-High (1) Punishment;
Medium-High (2) Retribution or retaliation;
Medium-High (3) A means to get a child to comply;
Medium-High (4) A convenience for caregivers or other persons; or
Medium-High (5) A substitute for effective treatment or habilitation.
Division 3, Orders

§748.2501. Are written orders required to administer emergency behavior intervention, and if so, who can write them?

According to the following chart, written orders by certain professionals are required to administer certain emergency behavior intervention:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Emergency Behavior Intervention</th>
<th>(A) Are written orders required to administer the intervention for a specific child?</th>
<th>(B) Who can write orders for the use of the intervention for a specific child?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(no weight)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) Short personal restraint</td>
<td>(A) NO.</td>
<td>(B) Not applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(no weight)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Personal restraint</td>
<td>(A) NO. However, successive restraints, a restraint simultaneous with emergency medication, and/or a restraint that exceeds the maximum time limit all require orders as specified in this subchapter. PRN orders are also permitted under §748.2507 of this title (relating to Under what conditions are PRN orders permitted for a specific child?).</td>
<td>(B) Not Applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) High</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) High</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) Medium-High</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) Medium-High</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Emergency medication</td>
<td>(A) YES.</td>
<td>(B) A licensed physician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) High</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) High</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Seclusion</td>
<td>(A) YES, except written orders are not required when you provide emergency care services to the child placed in seclusion.</td>
<td>(B) A licensed psychiatrist, psychologist, or physician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) High</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) High</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) Mechanical restraint</td>
<td>(A) YES.</td>
<td>(B) A licensed psychiatrist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) High</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) High</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§748.2503. Must the written order be in a child’s record before a caregiver can use an emergency behavior intervention on a child?

Yes, any type of written order that is required, must be in the child’s record before a caregiver can use emergency behavior intervention on that child, except for seclusion when it is necessary to prevent the child from endangering himself or others. In this seclusion situation, a licensed psychiatrist, psychologist, or physician must provide a verbal order within one hour after a caregiver initiates the seclusion. The caregiver must document this order, and the professional who provides the verbal order must provide a written version of the order within 72 hours after issuing the order. The written copy must include the time, date, and the professional’s signature.
§748.2505. What information must a written order include?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention
Division 3, Orders
January 2007

(a) All written orders must include the following:

(1) A statement that the particular type of emergency behavior intervention may only be used in an emergency situation;

(2) Designation of the specific intervention and procedure or technique that is authorized;

(3) Any specific measures for ensuring the child’s health, safety, and well being, and the privacy of the setting that safeguards the child’s personal dignity;

(4) A complete description of the behaviors and circumstances under which the intervention may be used;

(5) Instructions for observation or heightened observation of the child during the intervention;

(6) The behaviors that indicate the child is ready to be released from the intervention;

(7) The maximum length of time the child may be restrained or secluded regardless of behaviors exhibited;

(8) The prescribing professional’s consideration of any potential medical and/or psychiatric contraindications for the specific child, such as a history of physical or sexual abuse or victimization involving the type of intervention; and

(9) Clinical justification for the intervention.

(b) For emergency medication, the written order must also include instructions on how to administer the medication.

(c) For mechanical restraint, the written order must also include the specific device or devices authorized.
§748.2507. Under what conditions are PRN orders permitted for a specific child?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention
Division 3, Orders
January 2007

PRN orders for certain emergency behavior interventions are permitted under the following conditions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Emergency Behavior Intervention</th>
<th>Conditions:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Short personal restraint</td>
<td>Not applicable, because short personal restraints do not require orders.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| (2) Personal restraint                  | Note: Continuation orders are required for extending the maximum amount of time for a personal restraint; and an order or recommendation from the service planning team is needed to forestall some triggered reviews.  
   (A) Orders must include the number of times a child may be restrained in a seven-day period.  
   (B) If the orders allow more than three restraints within a seven-day period, the order must include a plan for reducing the need for emergency behavior intervention.  
   (C) The licensed psychiatrist or psychologist must review PRN orders for personal restraint at least every 30 days. The review must include written clinical justification for the continuation of PRN orders and be documented in the child’s record.  
   (D) PRN orders may not be used to restrain a child beyond the maximum length of time for personal restraint. See §748.2801 of this title (relating to What is the maximum length of time that an emergency behavior intervention can be administered to a child?). |
| (3) Emergency medication                | The licensed physician must review PRN orders for emergency medication at least every 30 days. The review must include written clinical justification for the continuation of PRN orders and be documented in the child’s record. |
| (4) Seclusion                          | (A) A licensed psychiatrist ordering seclusion is permitted to use PRN orders; however, a licensed psychologist is not.  
   (B) PRN orders may not be used to seclude a child beyond the maximum length of time for seclusion. See §748.2801 of this title.  
   (C) The psychiatrist must review PRN orders for seclusion at least every 30 days. The review must include written clinical justification for the continuation of PRN orders and be documented in the child’s record. |
| (5) Mechanical restraint                | PRN orders are not permitted. |

(Weight: Medium-High, High, no weight)
Division 4, Responsibilities During Administration of Any Type of Emergency Behavior Intervention

§748.2551. What responsibilities does a caregiver have when implementing a type of emergency behavior intervention?

(a) The use of emergency behavior intervention must be an appropriate response to the behavior demonstrated, and de-escalation must have failed.

(b) The caregiver must act to protect the child’s safety and consider:
   (1) The characteristics of the immediate physical environment;
   (2) The permitted types of emergency behavior intervention; and
   (3) The potential risk of harm in using emergency behavior intervention versus the risk of not using emergency behavior intervention.

(c) The caregiver must:
   (1) Initiate an emergency behavior intervention in a way that minimizes the risk of physical discomfort, harm, or pain to the child; and
   (2) Use the minimal amount of reasonable and necessary physical force to implement the intervention.

(d) The caregiver must make every effort to protect the child’s:
   (1) Privacy, including shielding the child from onlookers; and
   (2) Personal dignity and well-being, including ensuring that the child’s body is appropriately covered.

(e) As soon as possible after starting any type of emergency behavior intervention, the caregiver must:
   (1) Explain to the child the behaviors the child must exhibit to be released or have the intervention reduced, if applicable; and
   (2) Permit the child to suggest actions the caregivers can take to help the child de-escalate.

(f) If the child does not appear to understand what he must do to be released from the emergency behavior intervention, the caregiver must attempt to re-explain it every 15 minutes until the child understands or is released from the intervention.
§748.2553. When must a caregiver release a child from an emergency behavior intervention?

A child must be released as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Emergency Behavior Intervention</th>
<th>The caregiver must release the child:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Short personal restraint</td>
<td>(A) Immediately when an emergency health situation occurs during the restraint. The caregiver must obtain treatment immediately; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(B) Within one minute, or sooner if the danger is over or the disruptive behavior is de-escalated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Personal restraint</td>
<td>(A) Immediately when an emergency health situation occurs during the restraint. The caregiver must obtain treatment immediately;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(B) Within one minute of the implementation of a prone or supine hold;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(C) As soon as the child’s behavior is no longer a danger to himself or others;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(D) As soon as the medication is administered; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(E) When the maximum time allowed for personal restraint is reached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Emergency medication</td>
<td>Not applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Seclusion</td>
<td>(A) Immediately when an emergency health situation occurs during the seclusion. The caregiver must obtain treatment immediately;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(B) As soon as the child’s behavior is no longer a danger to himself or others;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(C) No later than five minutes after the child begins exhibiting the required behaviors;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(D) When the maximum time allowed for seclusion is reached;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(E) If the child falls asleep in seclusion. In this situation, the caregiver must:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(i) Unlock the door;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ii) Continuously observe the child until he awakens; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(iii) Evaluate his overall well-being; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(F) If the child is receiving emergency care services:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(i) As soon as the child is no longer a danger to himself or others;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ii) Upon the arrival of a medical professional; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(iii) Upon assistance from law enforcement or the fire department.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
**Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations**

**Type of Emergency Behavior Intervention**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Emergency Behavior Intervention</th>
<th>The caregiver must release the child:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(5) Mechanical restraint</td>
<td>(A) Immediately when an emergency health situation occurs during the restraint. The caregiver must obtain treatment immediately;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(B) As soon as the child's behavior is no longer a danger to himself or others;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(C) No later than five minutes after the child begins exhibiting the required behaviors;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(D) When the maximum time allowed for mechanical restraint is reached;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(E) If the child falls asleep in the mechanical restraint. In this situation, the caregiver must release the child from the restraint and continuously observe the child until he awakens and evaluate him.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

High

Medium-High

Medium-High

Medium-High

Division 5, Additional Responsibilities During Administration of a Personal Restraint

§748.2601. Who must monitor a personal restraint?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention

Division 5, Additional Responsibilities During Administration of a Personal Restraint

January 2007

High

(a) During any personal restraint, a caregiver qualified in emergency behavior intervention must monitor the child’s breathing and other signs of physical distress and take appropriate action to ensure adequate respiration, circulation, and overall well-being.

(no weight)

(b) If available, a caregiver who is not restraining the child should monitor the child. However, general residential operations and residential treatment centers with a capacity of more than 16 children must monitor prone and supine restraints as required in §748.2605(b) of this title (relating to What personal restraint techniques are prohibited?).
§748.2603. What is the appropriate action for a caregiver to take to ensure the child’s adequate respiration, circulation, and overall well-being?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention
Division 5, Additional Responsibilities During Administration of a Personal Restraint
January 2007

Appropriate action includes responding prudently to a potentially life-threatening situation, for example, releasing a child when a child is unresponsive or indicates he cannot breathe and immediately seeking medical assistance from a health-care professional.

Helpful Information

Signs of distress:

- **Circulation** – Are the child’s extremities cold to the touch? Are the child’s extremities turning blue or is the child turning blue around the mouth?
- **Respiration** – Is the child’s breathing rapid and shallow? Is there an absence of breathing? Is the child saying he or she cannot breathe?
- **Neurological** – Is the child disoriented? Is he or she having a seizure?
- **Gastrointestinal** – Is the child vomiting or losing control of his or her bowels?
- **Muscular-Skeletal** – Is there apparent bruising, swelling, and/or complaints of pain?

§748.2605. What personal restraint techniques are prohibited?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention
Division 5, Additional Responsibilities During Administration of a Personal Restraint
September 2010

(a) The following personal restraint techniques are prohibited:

- **High**
  - (1) Restraints that impair the child’s breathing by putting pressure on the child’s torso, including restraints that obstruct the child’s lungs from expanding such as leaning a child forward during a seated restraint;
  - (2) Restraints that obstruct the child’s airway, including procedures that place anything in, on, or over the child’s mouth, nose, or neck;
  - (3) Restraints that obstruct a caregiver’s ability to view the child’s face;
  - (4) Restraints that interfere with the child’s ability to communicate or vocalize distress; or
  - (5) Restraints that twist or place the child’s limb(s) behind the child’s back.

(b) Prone and supine restraints are prohibited except:

- **High**
  - (1) As a transitional hold that lasts no longer than one minute;
  - (2) As a last resort when other less restrictive interventions have proven to be ineffective; and

(continued)
High (3) When an observer meeting the following qualifications ensures the child’s breathing is not impaired:

High (A) Trained to identify risks associated with positional, compression, or restraint asphyxia;

High (B) Trained to identify risks associated with prone and supine holds; and

High (C) Not involved in the restraint. General residential operations and residential treatment centers with a capacity of 16 or fewer children are exempt from meeting this requirement.

Division 6, Additional Responsibilities During Administration of Seclusion

§748.2651. What are the additional responsibilities for implementing seclusion?

(a) Caregivers must continuously observe the child placed in seclusion. This observation can take place through a window or a one-way mirror. The use of a video camera to continuously observe a child in seclusion is not permitted.

(b) There must be a protected, private, and observable environment or room that safeguards the child’s personal dignity and well-being that must:

(1) Have 40 square-feet of floor space and a ceiling height of at least eight feet;

(2) Be free of safety hazards;

(3) Be adequately ventilated during warm weather and adequately heated during cold weather;

(4) Be appropriately lighted; and

(5) Have a mat and bedding, unless the prescribing professional writes orders to the contrary.

§748.2653. What must occur for a caregiver to remove the mat or bedding without a written order?

(a) If a caregiver cannot obtain a written order to remove the mat or bedding, the caregiver must obtain and document a licensed psychiatrist’s, psychologist’s, or physician’s verbal order with the rationale for the removal no later than one hour following the intervention.

(b) The verbal order must include an evaluation by the psychiatrist, psychologist, or physician assessing whether seclusion is the most appropriate intervention for the child given the situation.

(continued)
Medium-Low  (c) The professional who provides the verbal order must provide a written version of the order within 72 hours of issuing the order. The written copy must include the time, date, and the professional’s signature.

Division 7, Additional Responsibilities During Administration of a Mechanical Restraint

§748.2701. What are the additional responsibilities for implementing a mechanical restraint?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention  
Division 7, Additional Responsibilities During Administration of a Mechanical Restraint  
January 2007

High  (a) Only commercially available devices specifically designed for the safe and comfortable restraint of humans may be used as mechanical restraints.

Medium-High  (b) Mechanical restraint devices must be inspected after each use to ensure that they are in good repair and are free from tears or protrusions that may cause injury. Damaged devices may not be used to restrain a child.

Medium  (c) There must be a protected, private, and observable environment or room that safeguards the child’s personal dignity and well-being.

High  (d) Caregivers must continuously observe the child placed in mechanical restraint ensuring the child has adequate respiration, circulation, and overall well-being. This observation can take place through a window or a one-way mirror. The use of a video camera to continuously observe a child in mechanical restraint is not permitted. In addition to continual observation, a caregiver must check for circulation, skin color, and respiration at least every 15 minutes.

§748.2703. May my residential treatment center use altered mechanical restraint devices when restraining a child?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention  
Division 7, Additional Responsibilities During Administration of a Mechanical Restraint  
January 2007

Medium-High  Yes; however, any alteration of commercially available mechanical restraint devices must be reviewed and approved by a licensed psychiatrist who must:

(1) Base his approval on the individual child’s special physical needs; and

(2) Take into consideration any potential medical contraindications, including psychiatric contraindications, such as the child’s history of sexual abuse or previous use of mechanical restraints.
§748.2705. What mechanical and other restraint devices are prohibited?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention
Division 7, Additional Responsibilities During Administration of a Mechanical Restraint
September 2010

The following must not be used as restraint devices:

- Devices with metal wrist or ankle cuffs, such as handcuffs or shackles;
- Devices with rubber bands, rope, or cord;
- Devices with padlocks, key locks, or fastening devices;
- Long ties, such as leashes;
- Bed sheets or blankets; and
- Veil beds.

Division 8, Successive Use and Combinations of Emergency Behavior Intervention

§748.2751. May a caregiver successively use emergency behavior interventions on a child?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention
Division 8, Successive Use and Combinations of Emergency Behavior Intervention
September 2010

(a) A caregiver may successively use emergency behavior interventions on a child only if:

- Allowed by your policies;
- Permitted by rules of this subchapter for both types of emergency behavior intervention; and
- The following written orders are met:

(A) If the successive intervention is seclusion immediately following a personal restraint or mechanical restraint: the written order for the seclusion meets the requirements in Division 3 of this subchapter (relating to Orders) and provides clinical justification for the use of the seclusion successive to a personal restraint or a mechanical restraint;

(B) If the successive intervention is a mechanical restraint immediately following a personal restraint or seclusion: the written order for the mechanical restraint meets the requirements in Division 3 of this subchapter and permits and provides clinical justification for the use of the mechanical restraint successive to a personal restraint or a seclusion; and

(continued)
(C) If the successive intervention is a personal restraint immediately following a seclusion or a mechanical restraint: The professional ordering the seclusion or mechanical restraint must approve of and provide clinical justification for the successive use of the personal restraint in a written order.

(b) If the successive intervention is personal restraint immediately following another personal restraint, the time spent in the personal restraints is cumulative and may not exceed the maximum length of time permitted.

(c) A caregiver must allow the child:

1. Bathroom privileges at least once every two hours;
2. An opportunity to drink water at least once every two hours;
3. Regularly prescribed medications unless otherwise ordered by the licensed physician;
4. Regularly scheduled meals and snacks served in a safe and appropriate manner; and
5. An environment that is adequately ventilated during warm weather, adequately heated during cold weather, appropriately lighted, and free of safety hazards.

§748.2753. May a caregiver simultaneously use emergency medication in combination with another emergency behavior intervention?

(a) A caregiver may simultaneously use emergency medication in combination with personal restraint or seclusion only if:

1. Allowed by your policies;
2. Permitted by the rules of this subchapter for both types of emergency behavior intervention; and
3. Written orders specifically allow the combination.

(b) The written orders must include clinical justification for the combination of emergency medication with personal restraint or seclusion that goes beyond the justification for the use of a single emergency behavior intervention. Clinical justification for the combination must be provided by:

1. The licensed physician ordering the emergency medication for the combination of emergency medication and seclusion; or
2. Both the licensed physician ordering the emergency medication and the professional ordering the personal restraint, if they are different people.
§748.2755. May a caregiver simultaneously implement mechanical restraint in combination with emergency medication?

A caregiver may simultaneously implement mechanical restraint in combination with emergency medication only if:

1. Allowed by your policies;
2. Permitted by the rules of this subchapter for both types of emergency behavior intervention; and
3. Written orders specifically allow the combination.

The written orders must include clinical justification for the combination of mechanical restraint and emergency medication that goes beyond the justification for the use of a single emergency behavior intervention. Clinical justification for the combination of mechanical restraint and emergency medication must be coordinated and provided by the licensed psychiatrist ordering the mechanical restraint and the licensed physician ordering the emergency medication, if they are different people.

§748.2757. May a caregiver simultaneously implement mechanical restraint in combination with seclusion?

No, mechanical restraint and seclusion may not be simultaneously implemented.
Division 9, Time Restrictions for Emergency Behavior Intervention

§748.2801. What is the maximum length of time that an emergency behavior intervention can be administered to a child?

The maximum length of time that certain emergency behavior interventions can be administered to a child is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of Emergency Behavior Intervention</th>
<th>The maximum length of time is:</th>
<th>Medium-High</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Short personal restraint</td>
<td>One minute.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Personal restraint</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) For a child under nine years old, 30 minutes.</td>
<td>High</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) For a child nine years old or older, one hour.</td>
<td>High</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C) A prone or supine personal restraint hold may not exceed one minute.</td>
<td>High</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Emergency medication</td>
<td>Not applicable.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Seclusion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) For a child under nine years old, one hour.</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) For a child nine years old or older, two hours.</td>
<td>Medium-High</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) Mechanical restraint</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) For a child under nine years old, 30 minutes.</td>
<td>High</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) For a child nine years old or older, one hour.</td>
<td>High</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§748.2803. How long may a caregiver seclude or mechanically restrain a child who has been released within the same 12-hour time period?

If a child is released from seclusion or a mechanical restraint and then secluded or mechanically restrained again within the same 12-hour period, the time spent in seclusion or mechanical restraint is cumulative and may not exceed the maximum length of time permitted.
§748.2805. Can a caregiver exceed the maximum length of time that an emergency behavior intervention can be administered to a child?

A caregiver may exceed the maximum length of time for certain emergency behavior interventions as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of Emergency Behavior Intervention</th>
<th>The maximum length of time is:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Short personal restraint</td>
<td>May not be exceeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Personal restraint</td>
<td>May be exceeded if the caregiver obtains a written continuation order before the end of the time period from a licensed psychiatrist with written clinical justification: (A) Indicating that the emergency situation continues to exist; and (B) For the length of time he permits the child to be restrained.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Emergency medication</td>
<td>Not applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Seclusion</td>
<td>May be exceeded if the caregiver obtains a written continuation order before the end of the time period from the licensed psychiatrist, psychologist, or physician with written clinical justification: (A) Indicating that the emergency situation continues to exist; and (B) For the length of time he permits the child to be secluded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) Mechanical restraint</td>
<td>May be exceeded if the caregiver obtains a written continuation order before the end of the time period from the licensed psychiatrist with written clinical justification: (A) Indicating that the emergency situation continues to exist; and (B) For the length of time he permits the child to be restrained, which must not exceed 12 hours.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§748.2807. May continuation orders be obtained verbally to exceed the maximum length of time that seclusion or mechanical restraint can be administered to a child?

(a) Yes, if:

(1) The caregiver does a face-to-face evaluation of the child;

(2) Verbal authorization is obtained before the end of the maximum length of time;

(3) The caregiver documents the verbal continuation orders; and (continued)
Medium (4) The professional who provides the verbal order provides a written version of the order within 72 hours of issuing the order. The written copy must include the time, date, and the professional’s signature.

(b) If the seclusion and mechanical restraint continues beyond the maximum length of time, then the caregiver must allow the child:

Medium
(1) Bathroom privileges at least once every two hours;
Medium-High
(2) An opportunity to drink water at least once every two hours;
Medium-High
(3) Regularly prescribed medications, unless otherwise ordered by the licensed physician;
Medium-High
(4) Regularly scheduled meals and snacks served in a safe and appropriate manner; and
Medium-High
(5) An environment that is adequately ventilated during warm weather, adequately heated during cold weather, appropriately lighted, and free of safety hazards.

Medium-High (c) If the mechanical restraint continues beyond the maximum length of time, then the caregiver must also allow the child an opportunity for range-of-motion exercises for at least five minutes of each hour a child is in restraint.

Division 10, General Caregiver Responsibilities, Including Documentation, After the Administration of Emergency Behavior Intervention

§748.2851. What follow-up actions must caregivers take after the child’s behavior no longer constitutes an emergency situation?  

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention  
Division 10, General Caregiver Responsibilities, Including Documentation, After the Administration of Emergency Behavior Intervention  
January 2007

Medium (a) The caregivers must take appropriate actions to help the child return to routine activities. The follow-up actions of the caregivers must include:

Medium
(1) Providing the child with an appropriate transition and offering the child an opportunity to return to regular activities;

Medium-High
(2) Observing the child for at least 15 minutes; and

Medium
(3) Providing the child with an opportunity to discuss the situation that led to the need for emergency behavior intervention and the caregiver’s reaction to that situation. The discussion must be held in private as soon as possible and no later than 48 hours after the child’s use of an emergency medication or release from any emergency behavior intervention.

(continued)
(b) Caregivers involved in the emergency behavior intervention must conduct a post-emergency behavior intervention discussion with the child. The goal of the discussion is to allow the child and caregiver to discuss:

1. The child’s behavior and the circumstances that constituted the need for an emergency behavior intervention;
2. The strategies attempted before the use of the emergency behavior intervention and the child’s reaction to those strategies;
3. The emergency behavior intervention itself and the child’s reaction to the emergency behavior intervention;
4. How caregivers can assist the child in regaining self-control in the future to avoid the administration of an emergency behavior intervention; and
5. What the child can do to regain self-control in the future to avoid the administration of an emergency behavior intervention.

(c) Caregivers involved in the emergency behavior intervention must:

1. Debrief with each other concerning the incident as soon as possible after the situation has stabilized; and
2. Make reasonable efforts to debrief with children in care who witness the incident.

(d) The supervisor(s) of the caregivers involved in the emergency behavior intervention must review the use of the emergency behavior intervention within 72 hours of the intervention.

(e) The caregivers do not have to return the child to previous activities or place the child in current activities that the group is participating in if the caregivers deem the child’s participation is not in the best interests of the child or the other children in the group. However, caregivers must engage the child in an alternative routine activity.

(f) This rule does not apply to the following types of emergency behavior intervention:

1. Short personal restraint; and
2. Seclusion, if the child is receiving emergency care services.
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

§748.2853. What must the caregiver document after discussing with the child the use of the emergency behavior intervention?  
Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention  
Division 10, General Caregiver Responsibilities, Including Documentation, After the Administration of Emergency Behavior Intervention  
September 2010

The caregiver must document the following after discussing with the child the use of the emergency behavior intervention:

Medium-Low  (1) The date and time the caregiver offered the discussion;
Medium-Low  (2) The child’s reaction to the opportunity for discussion;
Medium-Low  (3) The date and time the discussion took place, if applicable; and
Medium-Low  (4) The content of the discussion, if applicable.

§748.2855. When must a caregiver document the use of an emergency behavior intervention, and what must the documentation include?  
Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention  
Division 10, General Caregiver Responsibilities, Including Documentation, After the Administration of Emergency Behavior Intervention  
September 2010

Medium  (a) As soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours after the initiation of the intervention, the caregiver must document in the child’s record the following information:

Medium  (1) The child’s name;
Medium  (2) A description and assessment of the circumstances and specific behaviors that caused the basis for the emergency behavior intervention;
Medium  (3) The de-escalation attempted before and during the use of the emergency behavior intervention and the child’s reaction to those strategies;
Medium  (4) The specific emergency behavior intervention administered;
Medium  (5) The date and time the intervention was administered;
Medium  (6) The length of time the child was restrained or secluded;
Medium  (7) The name of the caregiver(s) that participated in the incident that led to the intervention, and who administered the intervention;
Medium  (8) The name of the person(s) who observed the child;
Medium  (9) All attempts to explain to the child what behaviors were necessary for release from the intervention;
Medium  (10) The child’s condition following the use of the medication or release from the intervention, including any injury the child sustained as a result of the intervention or any adverse effects caused by the use of the intervention; and
Medium  (11) The actions the caregiver(s) took to facilitate the child’s return to normal activities following the end of the intervention.

(continued)
(b) Supervisors of caregivers involved in emergency behavior intervention of a child must document their review of the use of the intervention within 72 hours of the incident.

(c) If personal restraint is used, documentation must also include the specific restraint techniques used, including a prone or supine restraint used as a transitional hold.

(d) If emergency medication is used, documentation must also include the specific medication used and the dosage administered to the child.

(e) If mechanical restraint is used, documentation must also include:

(1) The specific restraint device used; and

(2) Continuous observation and regular respiration and circulation checks and times the checks were conducted.

(f) This rule does not apply to short personal restraints.

**Division 11, Triggered Reviews**

§748.2901. What circumstances trigger a review of the use of emergency behavior intervention for a specific child?

The following circumstances trigger a review for certain emergency behavior interventions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of Emergency Behavior Intervention</th>
<th>Circumstances that trigger a review:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Short personal restraint</td>
<td>Not applicable, because short personal restraints are not monitored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Personal restraint</td>
<td>(A) The same child is personally restrained four times within a seven-day period, unless there is a written order by a licensed psychiatrist or psychologist or service planning team recommendation that allows the use of four or more restraints on that child within the seven-day time period. A service planning team recommendation must include the same written information as an order. See §748.2505 of this title (relating to What information must a written order include?). (B) The same child is personally restrained more often than the written order or service planning team recommendation allows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Emergency medication</td>
<td>Emergency medication is used on the same child three times in a 30-day period.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of Emergency Behavior Intervention</th>
<th>Circumstances that trigger a review:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(4) Seclusion</td>
<td>(A) The seclusion of the same child continues for more than 12 hours; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(B) The same child is secluded three times in a seven-day period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) Mechanical restraint</td>
<td>(A) The mechanical restraint of the same child continues for more than three hours; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(B) The same child is mechanically restrained three times in a seven-day period.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§748.2903. When must a triggered review occur?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention
Division 11, Triggered Reviews
January 2007

(a) A triggered review must occur as soon as possible, but no later than 30 days after the review is triggered.

(b) The regularly scheduled review of the child’s service plan can serve as the triggered review if it meets the requirements in §748.2907 of this title (relating to What must the triggered review include and what must be documented in the child’s record?) and takes place no later than 30 days after the review is triggered.

§748.2905. Who must participate in the triggered review?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention
Division 11, Triggered Reviews
January 2007

A full service planning team must participate in the triggered review. Even if the child is not receiving treatment services, the two additional professions required in §748.1339(b) of this title (relating to Who must be involved in developing an initial service plan?) must be involved in the triggered review.

§748.2907. What must the triggered review include and what must be documented in the child’s record?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention
Division 11, Triggered Reviews
January 2007

The following must be included in a triggered review and documented in the child’s record:

(1) The same items that must be included and documented in an initial service plan, (see §748.1337 of this title (relating to What must a child’s initial service plan include?));

(2) A review of the records and orders of the emergency behavior interventions;

(continued)
Medium-High (3) A review and documentation of any potential medical or psychiatric reason for not using emergency behavior interventions on the child, including the prescribing professional’s consideration of any potential medical and/or psychiatric contraindications for the specific child, such as a history of physical or sexual abuse or victimization involving the type of intervention;

Medium-High (4) An examination of alternatives to manage the child’s behavior and to assist the child in managing his own behavior; and

Medium-High (5) A written plan for reducing the need for emergency behavior intervention.

§748.2909. What if there are four triggered reviews within a 90-day period?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention
Division 11, Triggered Reviews
January 2007

If there are four triggered reviews within a 90-day period:

Medium-High (1) A licensed psychiatrist, psychologist, clinical social worker, professional counselor, or marriage and family therapist must examine the child; and

Medium-High (2) The licensed professional must make service plan recommendations regarding the use of emergency behavior interventions. You must document these recommendations in the child’s record.

Division 12, Overall Operation Evaluation

§748.2951. What is an overall operation evaluation?

Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention
Division 12, Overall Operation Evaluation
January 2007

(a) The overall operation evaluation is an annual review regarding:

Medium (1) The use and effectiveness of emergency behavior interventions at your operation; and

Medium (2) Your emergency behavior intervention policies and procedures, including the training policy and curriculum.

(b) The objectives of the evaluation are to:

Medium (1) Develop and maintain an environment or milieu that supports positive and constructive behaviors of children in care;

Medium (2) Use any type of emergency behavior intervention safely, appropriately, and effectively; and

Medium (3) Eliminate or reduce physical injuries and any other negative side effects on the child’s behavior or emotional development resulting from the emergency behavior interventions.

(continued)
One focus of the evaluation must be on:

1. The frequency, patterns, and effectiveness of the types of emergency behavior intervention techniques that are used for all children in your operation;
2. Strategies to reduce the need for emergency behavior interventions for all children in your operation; and
3. Specific strategies to reduce the need for use of specific types of emergency behavior intervention techniques for all children in your operation.

The results of each overall operation evaluation must be made available to us for review.

§748.2953. What data must be collected? Subchapter N, Emergency Behavior Intervention Division 12, Overall Operation Evaluation January 2007

(a) Quarterly, you must collect, document, and review aggregate numbers of emergency behavior interventions by type of intervention, with the exception of short personal restraints.

(b) This information must be reported to us quarterly.

(c) You must maintain the data for five years.

Helpful Information

You must use the provider login section of the DFPS Child Care Licensing web site to report quarterly emergency behavior intervention statistics to Licensing. Please note that you are expected to submit a report even if no emergency behavior interventions were used within your operation during the quarter.

The quarterly data on emergency behavior interventions is due to Licensing at the end of each quarter. Since the current minimum standards went into effect on January 2007, this is when the data collection was expected to begin. The quarterly reports are based on this start date. Therefore, quarterly reports should represent the following time frames each calendar year:

Quarter 1 – January through March
Quarter 2 – April through June
Quarter 3 – July through September
Quarter 4 – October through December
Subchapter O, Safety and Emergency Practices

Division 1, Sanitation and Health Practices

§748.3001. When must I have an annual sanitation inspection?

(a) A local sanitation official must conduct a sanitation inspection of your operation:

(1) Before we issue you an initial permit; and

(2) At least once every 12 months from the date of the last sanitation inspection.

(b) Each inspection must meet regulations set by the local health department ordinances.

(c) If an inspection is not available from a local sanitation official, you must:

(1) Obtain documentation from a state or local sanitation official or a county judge stating that an inspection is not available; and

(2) Maintain this documentation at the operation and make it available to us upon request.

§748.3003. How must I document that a sanitation inspection has been completed?

You must keep the most recent sanitation inspection report, letter, or checklist at your operation to verify the inspection date and findings. The report must include the name and telephone number of the inspector.

§748.3005. Must I make all corrections specified in the sanitation inspection report?

You must correct deficiencies and comply with corrections, restrictions, or conditions that the inspector specifies in the sanitation report, letter, or checklist.

§748.3007. What must I sanitize?

You must sanitize any item or surface that comes into contact with bodily fluids and has the possibility for cross contamination.
§748.3009. How should items be sanitized?

Items may be sanitized by:

1. Completing the four-step process outlined in the definition in §748.43(41) of this title (relating to What do certain words and terms mean in this chapter?);
2. Washing the items for five or more minutes in a dishwasher or washing machine that uses hot water of a temperature of at least 160 degrees Fahrenheit;
3. Washing in a three-compartment sink or three containers. The sinks and/or containers must be large enough to completely immerse the items for soaking, rinsing, and disinfecting; or
4. Following the requirements of any alternative methods that have been approved by the Department of State Health Services for your operation.

§748.3013. What are the parameters for sinks used for food service or food preparation?

All sinks that you use for food service or food preparation must be supplied with hot and cold running water under pressure.

§748.3015. How must caregivers handle bodily fluids that require universal precautions?

(a) Bodily fluids that require universal precautions include blood, vomit, or other bodily fluids that may contain blood.

(b) When handling these bodily fluids, caregivers must:

1. Use disposable, nonporous gloves;
2. Discard the gloves in a sanitary manner immediately after one use;
3. Wash hands with soap and running water after using and disposing of the gloves;
4. Dispose these bodily fluids in accordance with local regulations. Where local disposal regulations do not exist, the Department of State Health Services must be consulted regarding the appropriate disposal procedures and their recommendations must be followed; and
5. Dispose disposable syringes, needles, and other sharp items used by persons for injections or for medical or other procedures in a hard plastic, leak and puncture-resistant container immediately after use, and keep them inaccessible to children.
§748.3017. Are animals allowed at my operation?

Subchapter O, Safety and Emergency Practices
Division 1, Sanitation and Health Practices
September 2010

(a) Yes; if:

Medium (1) You have documentation at your operation showing dogs, cats, and ferrets have been vaccinated as required by Texas Health and Safety Code, Chapter 826; and

Medium (2) All animals on the premises, including pets and livestock, are treated according to a licensed veterinarian’s recommendations to protect the health and safety of children. If you choose to have animals on the premises, you must ensure that the animals do not create health problems or a health risk for children.

Medium (b) For therapeutic camp services, you must house horses and other animals that you maintain at a camp at a reasonable distance from any sleeping, living, eating, or food preparation area.

Best Practice Suggestion

If a child is pregnant, the following health precautions are recommended:

• Keep litter boxes out of the child’s bedroom or bathroom, kitchen, or dining area;
• Clean litter boxes daily; and
• Do not allow the pregnant child to clean litter boxes.

§748.3019. Must I use a licensed exterminator to treat my operation for insects, rodents, and other pests?

Subchapter O, Safety and Emergency Practices
Division 1, Sanitation and Health Practices
March 2008

(a) You may treat your operation for pests only if the Structural Pest Control Board or Department of Agriculture has certified you as a noncommercial applicator.

(b) Otherwise, you must use a pest control operator licensed by the Texas Structural Pest Control Board or Department of Agriculture to prevent, control, or eliminate pest infestations at your operation.

(c) For therapeutic camp services, you must maintain a vector control program to ensure effective control of all insects and rodents in the buildings and on the premises of your permanent camp. If chemical control is needed, then you must comply with subsections (a) and (b) of this section.
§748.3021. How must I protect children from dangerous tools and equipment?

Subchapter O, Safety and Emergency Practices
Division 1, Sanitation and Health Practices
January 2007

Medium-High

Dangerous tools and equipment, such as hatchets, saws, and axes must be stored, so they are inaccessible to children. Children may use these tools and equipment with caregiver supervision, as appropriate based on the child’s age, maturity, and treatment issues.

Division 2, Natural Gas and Liquefied Petroleum

§748.3061. When must my operation be inspected for gas leaks?

Subchapter O, Safety and Emergency Practices
Division 2, Natural Gas and Liquefied Petroleum
January 2007

Your operation must be inspected for gas leaks:

Medium-High
(1) Before we issue your initial permit; and

Medium-High
(2) At least once every 24 months from the date of the last inspection for gas leaks.

§748.3063. Who must conduct a gas leak inspection at my operation?

Subchapter O, Safety and Emergency Practices
Division 2, Natural Gas and Liquefied Petroleum
January 2007

Medium
(a) If your operation uses natural gas, a licensed plumber or a gas company official must conduct the gas leak inspection.

Medium
(b) If your operation uses liquefied propane (LP) gas, you must have your LP-gas system inspected for proper installation and leaks by:

(1) A licensed LP-gas servicing company; or

(2) A licensed plumber who is also licensed with the LP-gas section of the Texas Railroad Commission.

§748.3065. What documentation must I maintain regarding gas leak inspections?

Subchapter O, Safety and Emergency Practices
Division 2, Natural Gas and Liquefied Petroleum
January 2007

Medium-Low
(a) A written gas inspection report must show your gas system is free of leaks and must indicate the date of the inspection, as well as the name and telephone number of the inspector.

Medium-Low
(b) You must keep the most recent inspection report at your operation to verify the inspection date and findings.

Medium-High
(c) You must comply with all corrections, conditions, or restrictions specified in the gas inspection report within the timeframes specified by the inspector.
Division 3, Fire Safety Practices

§748.3101. When must I have a fire inspection?

You must have a fire inspection:

Medium-High (1) Before we issue your initial permit; and

Medium-High (2) At least once every 12 months from the date of the last fire inspection.

§748.3103. Who must conduct a fire inspection?

(a) A state or local fire inspector must conduct the inspection.

(b) If an inspector cannot conduct an inspection, you must provide documentation of this from a state or local fire inspector or county judge.

§748.3105. What documentation must I maintain regarding a fire inspection?

(a) You must keep the most recent fire inspection report, letter, or checklist at the operation to verify the inspection date and findings. The report must include the inspector’s name and telephone number.

(b) You must comply with the local code and all corrections, restrictions, or conditions specified by the inspector in the fire inspection report, letter, or checklist.

§748.3107. What type of smoke-detection system must I have?

(a) Your operation must have an operable smoke-detection system that is audible throughout the building. This may be:

(1) An electronic fire alarm and smoke-detection system; or

(2) Individual electric or battery-operated smoke detectors located according to the state or local fire inspector’s recommendations. If no fire inspector is available or able to give recommendations, smoke detectors must be located in the following areas:

(A) In hallways or open areas outside sleeping rooms; and

(B) On each level of a building with multiple levels.

(continued)
(b) Depending on the size and layout of the operation, additional smoke detectors may be required based on manufacturer’s or fire inspector’s instructions.

(c) New operations granted a permit by us on or after January 2007, must have smoke detectors that get their power from building wiring from a commercial source. Wiring must be permanent. Smoke detectors must:

1. Be equipped with a battery back-up; and
2. Emit a signal when the batteries are low.

§748.3109. How must smoke detectors be installed at my operation?

(a) Smoke detectors must be installed and maintained according to the manufacturer’s instructions or in compliance with the state or local fire inspector’s instructions.

(b) Batteries must be changed annually or sooner, as required to maintain operable smoke detector units.

§748.3111. How often must the smoke detectors at my operation be tested?

(a) The administrator or designee must test all battery-operated smoke detectors monthly by pressing the test button or switch on the unit. The date of the test and the name of the employee who does the testing must be documented and kept at the operation for review.

(b) A company licensed by the State Fire Marshal, or the state or local fire inspector, must test an electronic smoke alarm system at least annually. You must keep documentation of the inspection at the operation for review. The documentation must indicate the date of the inspection and the inspector’s name and telephone number.

§748.3113. Must my operation have a fire-extinguishing system?

(a) Your operation must have a fire-extinguishing system, which may be a sprinkler system and/or fire extinguishers.

(b) The state or local fire inspector must approve the sprinkler system and/or fire extinguishers in your operation. If an inspector cannot conduct an inspection, you must have at least one fire extinguisher in the operation rated not less than 3A:40BC.

(c) Any fire extinguisher that has been used or has lost operating pressure must be serviced or replaced immediately with an equivalent unit.
§748.3115. How often must I inspect and service the fire extinguisher(s)?

You must inspect the fire extinguisher(s) monthly and ensure:

1. There will be no interference with access to the extinguisher in an emergency, for example, there are no objects blocking access;
2. Fire extinguishers are accessible for immediate use by employees, caregivers, and volunteers; and
3. Fire extinguishers are serviced as required by manufacturer’s instructions, or as required by the state or local fire inspector.

Best Practice Suggestion

It is a good idea to mount fire extinguishers on the wall by a hanger or bracket, with the top of the extinguisher no higher than five feet above the floor and the bottom at least four inches above the floor or any other surface. If a state or local fire inspector has different mounting instructions, follow those instructions.

When inspecting a fire extinguisher, best practice suggests ensuring that:

- The fire extinguisher pressure is at the recommended level. On extinguishers with a gauge, the needle must be in the green zone;
- The pin and tamper seal are intact, if applicable;
- There are no leaks, dents, rust, chemical deposits or other signs of abuse or wear; and
- The date of the inspection and the name of the employee is recorded and maintained at the operation for one year.

§748.3117. How often must the state or local fire inspector inspect fire extinguisher(s)?

A company licensed by the State Fire Marshal must inspect each fire extinguisher at least annually and conduct any required service or testing. Newly purchased fire extinguishers do not require inspection during the first 12 months of service unless indicated by the monthly inspection.

You must keep documentation of the inspection and/or the purchase of new fire extinguishers at the operation for review. The documentation must indicate the date of the inspection and the inspector’s name and telephone number.
§748.3119. How often must a fire sprinkler system be inspected?

Subchapter O, Safety and Emergency Practices
Division 3, Fire Safety Practices
January 2007

Medium (a) If your operation has a fire sprinkler system, a company licensed by the State Fire Marshal must inspect the fire sprinkler system at least annually and conduct any required service or testing.

Medium-Low (b) You must keep the most recent inspection report at the operation for review. The documentation must indicate the date of the inspection and the inspector’s name and telephone number.

Division 4, Heating Devices

§748.3161. What steps must I take to ensure that heating devices do not present hazards to children?

Subchapter O, Safety and Emergency Practices
Division 4, Heating Devices
September 2010

Medium-High (a) Gas appliances must be safe and in good repair.

Medium-High (b) Space heaters must be enclosed and have a screen or guard.

Medium-High (c) You must ensure that children do not have access to floor and wall furnace grates, steam and hot water pipes, and electric space heaters.

Medium-High (d) If you use a fireplace or wood-burning stove, it must be kept clean and have a screen or guard.

Medium-High (e) You may not use a stove to heat any part of the operation, including portable camp stoves.

Medium-High (f) You may not use open flame or liquid fuel heaters.
Division 5, Carbon Monoxide Safety Practices

§748.3191. Must I have a carbon monoxide detector-system?

You must have an operable carbon monoxide detector-system if your operation has gas appliances. This may be:

1. An electronic carbon monoxide detector-system; or
2. Individual electric or battery-operated carbon monoxide detectors.

Best Practice Suggestion

Some sources of carbon monoxide include: appliances fueled with natural gas, liquefied petroleum (LP gas), oil, kerosene, coal, or wood may produce carbon monoxide, such as unvented kerosene and gas space heaters; leaking chimneys and furnaces; back-draft from furnaces, gas water heaters, wood stoves, and fireplaces; gas stoves; gas air conditioners and refrigerators. Burning charcoal and automobile exhaust also produce carbon monoxide. Avoid conditions that place people in closed spaces where exhaust can accumulate and cause carbon monoxide poisoning.

It is best to:

- Not turn on a gasoline or kerosene-operated engine or tools, charcoal grill or a barbecue grill inside buildings or living quarters;
- Not burn charcoal indoors;
- Not use portable fuel-burning camping equipment inside a home, building, garage, vehicle, cabin, camper or tent;
- Open the garage door and garage windows fully for ventilation before starting a gasoline or kerosene operated engine, such as a generator, lawn mower or vehicle.
- Drive out as soon as possible if you turn on a vehicle in a garage, or keep the door connecting the garage to the building closed when the vehicle is running in the garage. Carbon monoxide can easily go from the garage through the door that opens into the building, even if your garage door is open to let in fresh air;
- Ensure appliances are installed according to manufacturer’s instructions and local building codes;
- Buy equipment carrying the seal of a national testing agency, such as the American Gas Association or the Underwriters’ Laboratory;
- Have the heating system (including chimneys and vents) inspected and serviced annually. The inspector should also check chimneys and flues for blockages, corrosion, partial and complete disconnections, and loose connections; and
- Keep your vehicle windows open while driving in heavy traffic or when the vehicle is idling, even when you run the air conditioner. Even with an air conditioner, carbon monoxide can be pulled into your car or truck while you drive slowly in heavy traffic.
§748.3193. How must carbon monoxide detectors be installed?

(a) You must install carbon monoxide detectors that meet Underwriters Laboratories Inc. requirements (UL-Listed).

(1) You must install carbon monoxide detectors according to manufacturer’s specifications for proper location and installation; and

(2) Furniture, draperies, or other items must not cover up detectors.

(b) If you use an electronic carbon monoxide detection-system connected to an alarm/smoke detection system, the system must be installed according to the state or local fire inspector’s requirements.

§748.3195. How must I maintain carbon monoxide detectors?

You must maintain electric or battery-operated carbon monoxide detectors in compliance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

Division 6, Emergency Evacuation and Relocation

§748.3231. What is an emergency evacuation and relocation plan?

(a) An emergency evacuation and relocation plan is a plan designed to ensure the safety of children during a fire, severe weather conditions, or another type of emergency requiring evacuation or relocation of children in care.

(b) In an emergency, your first responsibility is to move all the children to a designated safe area known to all employees, caregivers, and volunteers. Your plan must also require the person in charge of your operation during the emergency to:

(1) Designate an employee to call the fire department in case of fire or danger of fire, explosion, toxic fumes, or other chemical release. If the danger requires immediate evacuation of the operation, this person must first evacuate the operation and then make the necessary call from another location;

(2) Designate an employee responsible for securing children’s emergency numbers, emergency medical authorizations, and medications during the emergency;

(3) Once the person in charge is at the designated safe area, account for all children who were in attendance at the time of the emergency; and

(4) Ensure that no one uses elevators during a fire.
§748.3233. Must I have an emergency evacuation and relocation diagram?

(a) You must have a written emergency evacuation and relocation diagram specifying directions for egress on file at your operation.

(b) The emergency evacuation and relocation diagram must show the following:

(1) A floor plan of your operation;

(2) The designated location outside of the operation where all caregivers and children meet to ensure everyone has exited the operation safely;

(3) The designated location inside the operation where all caregivers and children take shelter from threatening weather; and

(4) At least two exit routes that:

(A) Are located in distant parts of the building and lead to the outside;

(B) Are not blocked in any way, including with furniture or equipment;

(C) Are not through a kitchen or other hazardous area, unless specifically approved in writing by the state or local fire inspector. The written approval must be signed and dated by the state or local fire inspector and maintained at your operation for our review;

(D) Are not a window, unless children and caregivers are physically able to exit through the window to the ground outside safely and quickly;

(E) Are not doors or windows that are locked and require a key to open from the inside, unless specifically approved in writing by the state or local fire inspector. The written approval must be signed and dated by the state or local fire inspector and maintained at your operation for our review;

(F) Do not lead into a pool area; and

(G) If above the ground level, are served by standard stairs and do not require ladders, folding stairs, or trap doors to gain access to the ground floor.

§748.3235. Where must I post the emergency evacuation and relocation diagram?

You must post the emergency evacuation and relocation diagram in a prominent and visible location in all buildings used by an employee, volunteer, or child.
§748.3237. What other safety provisions must I make?  
Subchapter O, Safety and Emergency Practices  
Division 6, Emergency Evacuation and Relocation  
January 2007

Medium-High  (a) Closet door latches must allow children to open the door from the inside of the closet.

Medium-High  (b) In case of electrical failure, you must have an operable source of emergency lighting that is approved by the state or local fire inspector, or operable battery-powered lighting.

Medium-High  (c) Children must be able to open emergency exit doors easily from the inside, unless specifically approved in writing by the state or local fire inspector. The written approval must be signed and dated by the state or local fire inspector and maintained at your operation for our review.

§748.3239. How often must I practice my emergency evacuation and relocation plans?  
Subchapter O, Safety and Emergency Practices  
Division 6, Emergency Evacuation and Relocation  
January 2007

Medium  (a) You must practice an unannounced fire drill at least once every six months from the date of the last fire drill. During each drill:

Medium-Low  (1) You must set off a fire alarm or smoke detector;

Medium  (2) The participants must use alternate exit routes;

Medium  (3) The children must be able to safely exit the building to the designated meeting place within three minutes; and

Medium  (4) The participants must not use elevators.

Medium  (b) You must practice a severe weather drill at least once every six months from the date of the last severe weather drill.

Medium  (c) Emergency evacuation and relocation plans must be routinely practiced at different times during hours of operation.

Medium-Low  (d) You must document these drills, including the date of the drill, time of the drill, type of drill, and length of time for the evacuation or relocation to take place.
Division 7, First-Aid Kits

§748.3271. Must I have a first-aid kit at my operation?

Yes. All separate living areas and buildings must have a complete first-aid kit available. A first-aid kit must also be available for all field trips. Each first-aid kit must be:

1. Clearly labeled;
2. Kept in a clean and sanitary condition;
3. In good condition and not have expired medications or supplies;
4. Easily accessible to all employees;
5. Stored in a designated location known to all employees; and

§748.3273. What must each first-aid kit contain?

Each first-aid kit must contain at least the following supplies:

1. A current guide to first aid and emergency care;
2. Adhesive tape;
3. Antiseptic solution or wipes;
4. Cotton balls;
5. Multi-size adhesive bandages;
6. Scissors;
7. Sterile gauze pads;
8. Thermometer;
9. Tweezers; and
10. Waterproof, disposable gloves.
Subchapter P, Physical Site

Division 1, Grounds and General Requirements

§748.3301. What general physical site requirements must my operation meet?

High (a) Buildings, including exterior and interior surfaces (such as walls, floors, and ceilings), must be structurally sound, clean, and in good repair. Paints used at the operation after January 2007, must be lead-free.

High (b) Buildings must comply with applicable building, plumbing, electrical, fire, and similar codes.

Medium-High (c) Windows and doors must be in good repair and free of broken glass or hazards. Windows used for ventilation, including windows in doors, must be provided with properly fitted and secure screens in good repair for protection from insects when windows are open.

Medium (d) Walkways must be free of ice, snow, and obstruction.

Medium (e) Outdoor areas must be well drained.

Medium-High (f) The grounds of the operation must be well maintained and free of hazards.

Medium (g) The grounds of the operation must be free of accumulation of garbage and debris and maintained in a sanitary manner. All garbage must be disposed of in a sanitary manner in accordance with the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (see 30 TAC Chapter 330, Municipal Solid Waste). Outdoor garbage cans must have lids.

Medium-High (h) The building must be free of rodents and insects.

Medium-High (i) Equipment and furniture must be safe for children and must be kept clean and in good repair.

Helpful Information

Repair work that is scheduled or in progress may be considered as compliance with the requirements in this rule, as long as any risk to children has been adequately addressed. Related to subsection (h), this includes reasonable and timely efforts to control insects, such as regularly scheduled exterminator visits.

§748.3303. What parts of my operation must be ventilated?

Medium-High Living quarters, recreation areas, dining areas, bathrooms, bedrooms, and kitchens must be adequately ventilated by at least one operable window or mechanical ventilation system.
§748.3305. What are the requirements for handrails, railings, and stairway and stairwell landings?

Subchapter P, Physical Site
Division 1, Grounds and General Requirements
January 2007

Medium (a) Each ramp, stairway, and steps exceeding two steps must have a well-secured handrail. Stairs must have a minimum width of 36 inches.

Medium-High (b) Each porch or deck that has over an 18-inch drop must have a well-secured railing.

Medium (c) If a door opens directly to a stairway, the door must be a minimum of 34 inches wide. There must be a landing between the door and the stairs. The landing must be wide enough to allow the door to open and a person to safely step on to the landing while closing the door.

§748.3307. What are the requirements for lighting?

Subchapter P, Physical Site
Division 1, Grounds and General Requirements
January 2007

Medium-High (a) All living quarters must be provided with electric services.

(b) The following must be lighted in order to avoid accidents:

Medium-High (1) Habitable rooms;

Medium-High (2) Common use rooms, such as dining rooms, living rooms, laundry rooms, and gymnasiums;

Medium-High (3) Bathrooms;

Medium-High (4) Hallways;

Medium-High (5) Interior stairs;

Medium (6) Outside steps and doorways;

Medium (7) Porches;

Medium (8) Ramps; and

Medium-High (9) Fire escapes.

High (c) You may not use propane, kerosene, or other flammable fuel as a light source.

§748.3309. What are the requirements for a communication system?

Subchapter P, Physical Site
Division 1, Grounds and General Requirements
January 2007

Your operation must have:

Medium (1) An operable telephone with an outside line that is accessible to employees in emergencies. This telephone must have a listed telephone number and not be coin-operated; and

Medium (2) A communication system to allow employees to contact other employees in the operation for assistance in an emergency or as needed.
§748.3311. What are the requirements for using a tractor?  
You must never permit a child:

(1) Under 16 years old to operate a tractor; or
(2) To ride as a passenger on a tractor.

**Helpful Information**

A riding lawn mower is not considered a tractor. Riding lawn mowers are used only for mowing. A tractor is a multi-purpose vehicle used for towing or pulling something which cannot propel itself and, often, powering it too. A riding lawn mower is lawn equipment, while a tractor is farm equipment.

§748.3313. May I use water from a private water system?  
You may use water from a private water system if you maintain:

(1) The water supply in a safe and sanitary manner; and
(2) Written records indicating the private water supply meets the requirements of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality.

§748.3315. What are the requirements for running hot water?  
A thermostat must control the temperature of hot water accessible to children, so the water temperature is no higher than 120 degrees Fahrenheit.

§748.3317. May I use a septic system for sewage disposal?  
You may use a septic system for sewage disposal if the septic system:

(1) Is sanitary; and
(2) Meets the standards of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality, including any routine inspections required by law.
Division 2, Interior Space

§748.3351. What are the requirements for general living space?

You must provide:

Low
(1) Us with a sketch of the operation’s floor plan showing the dimensions and the purpose of all rooms and specifying where children and caregivers, if applicable, will sleep. This must be provided to us with the initial application for a permit and when changes are made;

Medium-High
(2) Living space, appropriate furnishings, and bathroom facilities that are safe, clean, and maintained in good repair;

Medium-Low
(3) Provisions for personal storage space in the child’s bedroom for each child’s clothing and belongings;

Medium-Low
(4) At least 40 square feet per child, including adult residents and children of caregivers residing at the operation, of indoor activity space, excluding bedrooms, halls, kitchens, bathrooms, and any other space not regularly available to a child;

Low
(5) Each bedroom with at least one window with outside exposure as a source of natural light, unless you were granted a permit by us prior to January 2007, and your permit is still valid; and

Medium-Low
(6) Every bedroom window with curtains, blinds, shades, or other provisions for rest and privacy.

§748.3353. May I use a video camera to supervise a child in the child’s bedroom?

(a) Video cameras may be used to supervise infants and toddlers.

(b) Video cameras may not be used to supervise children, other than infants and toddlers unless the:

Medium-Low
(1) Parent, or other person legally authorized to consent, consents to the use of the video camera; and

Medium-Low
(2) Child:

(A) Is younger than five years old;

(B) Has primary medical needs; or

(continued)
(C) Requires heightened supervision, such as a child who sleepwalks, experiences night terrors, engages in physically aggressive or sexual behavior problems, or resides in a bedroom with such a child. You must document the justification for the video camera in each child’s service plan, and each child must have other accessible and reasonable locations where he may change his clothing in private.

Medium-Low (c) Video cameras may not be used to tape the child, and images may not be accessible except to operation employees and caregivers.

§748.3355. May I use an audio monitoring device to supervise a child in the child’s bedroom?

Subchapter P, Physical Site Division 2, Interior Space
January 2007

(no weight) (a) Audio monitoring devices may be used to supervise infants and toddlers.

(b) Audio monitoring devices may not be used to supervise other children, except infants and toddlers, unless the:

Medium-Low (1) Parent, or other person legally authorized to consent, consents to the use of the audio monitoring device; and

Medium (2) Child:

(A) Is younger than five years old;

(B) Has primary medical needs; or

(C) Requires heightened supervision, such as a child who sleepwalks, experiences night terrors, engages in physically aggressive or sexual behavior problems, or resides in a bedroom with such a child. You must document the justification for the audio monitoring device in each child’s service plan.

§748.3357. What are the requirements for floor space in a bedroom used by a child?

Subchapter P, Physical Site Division 2, Interior Space
January 2007

Medium (a) Floor space:

(1) Is space that a child can use for daily activities;

(2) Does not include closets or other alcoves; and

(3) May not be averaged.

(continued)
Medium-Low  (b) You must provide comfortable sleeping arrangements that meet one of the following:

Medium  
(1) A single occupancy bedroom with at least 80 square feet of floor space; or

Medium  
(2) A bedroom with at least 60 square feet of space for each occupant and no more than four occupants per bedroom are permitted even if the square footage of the room would accommodate more than four occupants. The four-occupant restriction does not apply to children receiving treatment services for primary medical needs.

(no weight)  
(c) If we granted you a permit to provide emergency care services to a child prior to January 2007, then you are exempt from the 60 square feet of bedroom space for each occupant and the maximum bedroom occupancy requirement until:

(1) You move your operation to a new building;

(2) You structurally alter the current building by adding a new room; or

(3) Your permit is no longer valid.

(no weight)  
(d) If prior to January 2007, we granted you a permit, then you are exempt from the maximum bedroom occupancy requirement until:

(1) You move your operation to a new building;

(2) You structurally alter the current building by adding a new room; or

(3) Your permit is no longer valid.

§748.3359. What rooms may I not use as bedrooms?  
Subchapter P, Physical Site  
Division 2, Interior Space  
January 2007

You may not use the following as bedrooms:

Medium-Low  
(1) Rooms commonly used for other purposes, such as dining rooms, living rooms, hallways, porches or dens, except for a child temporarily requiring close supervision or a child who is admitted to your operation during sleeping hours (for the first night only). These exceptions are permitted only if the child is provided with comfortable sleeping arrangements and if supervision of the child is not compromised;

Medium-Low  
(2) Rooms that are passageways to other rooms; or

Medium-Low  
(3) Basements; however, if prior to January 2007, we granted you a permit, then basements may be used as bedrooms as long as other relevant requirements are met, and until:

(A) You move your operation to a new building;

(B) You structurally alter the current building by adding a new room; or

(C) Your permit is no longer valid.
§748.3361. May a child in care share a bedroom with an adult?

(a) Generally, each child should have his own designated bedroom or share a bedroom with other children.

(b) A child may share a bedroom with an adult if:

1. It is in the best interest of the child;
2. The child is under three years old and sleeps in the bedroom of the caregiver; and
3. Approval is documented and dated in the child’s service plan by the service planning team.

(c) To determine whether a child should share a bedroom with an adult resident, see §748.1937 of this title (relating to May an adult in care share a bedroom with a child in care?).

(d) Children may not sleep in the same bed with an adult caregiver at any time.

(e) Subsections (a) – (c) of this section do not apply to travel and camping situations.

§748.3363. May children of opposite genders share a bedroom?

(a) A child six years old or older must not share a bedroom with a child of the opposite gender. Prior to permitting a child under six years old to share a bedroom with a child of the opposite gender, the service planning team must assess:

1. What is in the best interest of each child;
2. The history of these children for possible sexual abuse and/or sexual behavior problems; and
3. The appropriateness.

(b) The assessment and approval by the service planning team must be documented and dated in each child’s record.
§748.3365. What are the requirements for beds and bedding?

You must provide each child with an individual bed or bunk bed. For infants and toddlers, a crib is allowable. For crib requirements, see §748.1751 of this title (relating to What specific safety requirements must my cribs meet?). Each bed being used by a child must have:

1. A clean and comfortable mattress;
2. A mattress cover or protector if the child is not provided with a mattress that is waterproof;
3. A pillow and bed linens appropriate for the temperature, including a pillowcase, top sheet, and fitted or bottom sheet;
4. Extra linens as needed for the child’s warmth and comfort, such as a blanket or bedspread; and
5. Clean bed linens that are changed or laundered if used by a different child and as often as needed for cleanliness and sanitation, but not less than once a week.

If laundry service is not provided, laundry facilities supplied with hot and cold water under pressure must be provided for all children in care to use.

Helpful Information

Mattress covers are not required to be plastic. Mattress covers are intended to provide an additional layer of protection between the child and the mattress, which may help prevent contamination of the mattress by a child’s bodily fluids or spread of germs from the mattress to the child (since multiple children may use the same mattress over the course of time). Regular washing of mattress covers may also be helpful to children who are allergic to dust mites.

§748.3367. What types of beds are not allowed for a child?

The following types of beds are not allowed:

1. Triple-deck beds;
2. Veil beds designed to prohibit a child from leaving the bed, not including beds that have mosquito netting to protect the child from mosquitoes or other insects;
3. Beds that have bedrails that can entrap a child; or
4. Any cribs, except for infants and toddlers.
§748.3369. What are the requirements for bunk beds?

(a) A bunk bed must only consist of double-deck beds.

(b) A child who is under six years old, non-ambulatory, or subject to seizures or other medical or physical problems who may require greater caregiver supervision and caregiver access must not use a top bunk bed.

(c) A bunk bed must allow enough space in between beds and the ceiling to allow a child to sit up in bed.

(d) A bunk bed must be equipped with a securely attached ladder capable of supporting the child using the bed and an employee.

(e) A bunk bed that is more than 30 inches above the floor must be equipped with securely attached safety bedrails along the lengths of the bed on each side with a means to allow a child to get in and out of bed. Bunk beds securely attached to a wall may use the wall as one of the required guardrails. The top of safety guardrails must be at least five inches above the top of the mattress. The bed rails and the mattress supports under the mattress must not be an entrapment hazard.

(f) Openings in guardrails or between ladder rungs must not have openings that can entrap a child’s body or body part that has penetrated the opening. Openings must measure less than 3 1/2 inches or more than nine inches to prevent a child’s body or body part from being entrapped.

(g) A bunk bed must be spaced to provide a walk space on at least one side and one end of each bed.
Division 3, Toilet and Bath Facilities

§748.3391. What are the general requirements for bathroom facilities?

(a) All bathrooms must be maintained in good repair and kept clean at all times.

(b) You must provide bathrooms located on the same floor as the child’s bedroom. The child must not have to exit the building to access the bathroom.

(c) To provide privacy, you must ensure a child does not have to cross an activity room, dining room, living room, or similar type room to access a bathroom from the child’s bedroom. If prior to January 2007, we granted you a permit, you are exempt from this requirement until:

(1) You move your operation to a new location;

(2) You structurally alter the current building by adding a new room; or

(3) Your permit is no longer valid.

(d) Each bathroom or room with a lock must be able to be unlocked from the outside during an emergency.

§748.3393. What are the requirements for a toilet that a child uses?

(a) Your operation must dispose of wastewater into a sanitary sewage system, or an approved septic system in accordance with the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality, and submit to any routine inspections required by law.

(b) You must provide:

(1) At least one toilet for every eight children. All toilets must provide individual privacy, including doors to individual toilet stalls; and

(2) Separate toilet facilities for males and females.

(c) When toilet facilities for each gender are located in the same building, the toilet facilities must be:

(1) Distinctly marked for each gender; and

(2) Separated by a solid wall from floor to ceiling.

(d) Toilets must be equipped with toilet paper at all times.

(e) Toilet facilities must meet the handicap accessibility standards according to the American with Disabilities Act, if applicable.

(f) Urinals may be substituted for the toilets for the males on a ratio of one urinal or 24 inches of trough-type urinal for one toilet, not to exceed one-third of the required toilets. Urinals must have privacy walls on three sides that must be constructed of nonabsorbent materials.
§748.3395. What are the requirements for hand-washing sinks that a child uses?  
Subchapter P, Physical Site  
Division 3, Toilet and Bath Facilities  
January 2007

Medium  
(a) You must maintain all hand-washing sinks in good repair and keep them clean at all times.  
(b) You must provide:  

Medium  
(1) At least one hand-washing sink for every eight children;  
Medium  
(2) A hand-washing sink that is adjacent to toilet facilities;  
Medium-Low  
(3) Hand-washing sinks with hot and cold running water under sufficient pressure to meet the demands of the children; and  
Medium  
(4) Hand-washing sinks equipped with soap and a personal towel, single-use disposable towels, or hot air hand dryers.

§748.3397. What are the requirements for bathing facilities?  
Subchapter P, Physical Site  
Division 3, Toilet and Bath Facilities  
January 2007

Medium  
(a) All bath and shower areas must provide for individual privacy. This includes doors or nonabsorbent shower curtains to individual bathtubs and showers stalls.  
(b) You must provide:  

Medium-Low  
(1) At least one bathtub or shower for every eight females and one for every eight males; and  
Medium  
(2) Separate shower and bath facilities for each gender, where applicable.  
(c) When common-use shower facilities for each gender are located in the same building, the facilities must be:  
Low  
(1) Distinctly marked for each gender; and  
Low  
(2) Separated by a solid wall from the floor to ceiling.  
(d) Each shower and bathtub must be equipped with:  
Low  
(1) Hot and cold running water under sufficient pressure to meet the demands of the children; and  
Medium-Low  
(2) Sufficient hot water to meet the demands of the children.  
(e) If prior to January 2007, we granted you a permit, then you do not have to comply with these requirements until:  
(1) You move your operation to a new location;  
(2) You structurally alter the current bathroom facilities; or  
(3) Your permit is no longer valid.
§748.3399. May I use a video camera or audio monitoring device to supervise a child while the child is in a bathroom?

Subchapter P, Physical Site
Division 3, Toilet and Bath Facilities
January 2007

Medium-High No. You may not use a video camera or audio monitoring device to supervise a child while the child is in a bathroom.

Division 4, Poisons

§748.3421. What are the requirements for protecting children from poisonous or flammable material?

Subchapter P, Physical Site
Division 4, Poisons
January 2007

Medium-High You must ensure that poisonous or flammable materials are:

High (1) Stored in their original, labeled containers;

High (2) Kept separate from medication, food, food preparation surfaces, and dining surfaces;

Medium-High (3) Inaccessible to children, unless caregivers have evaluated a child as capable and likely to use such items responsibly; and

High (4) Cleaned up immediately when spilled.

Division 5, Food Preparation, Storage, and Equipment

§748.3441. What general requirements apply to food service and preparation?

Subchapter P, Physical Site
Division 5, Food Preparation, Storage, and Equipment
September 2010

Medium-High (a) All food and drinks must be of safe quality and must be stored, prepared, distributed, and served under sanitary and safe conditions.

Medium (b) You must sanitize food service equipment, dishware, and utensils after each use. All eating and cookware must be properly stored.

Medium-High (c) You must keep furniture, equipment, food contact surfaces, and other areas where food is prepared, eaten, or stored clean and in good repair.

Medium (d) If your operation lacks adequate facilities for sanitizing dishes and utensils, you must only use disposable, single-use items.

Medium (e) You must discard single-service napkins, bibs, dishware, containers, and utensils after each use.

(continued)
(f) You must wash re-useable napkins and bibs after each use.

(g) You must wash re-useable tablecloths when soiled.

(h) Persons who handle food and/or eating utensils for the group must:

   (1) Maintain personal cleanliness;
   (2) Keep hands clean at all times;
   (3) Wash his hands with soap and water thoroughly after each visit to the toilet;
   (4) Be free of infections commonly transmitted through the handling of food or drink and free of communicable diseases; and
   (5) Minimize food contamination through the use of utensils.

(i) Food packages must be in good condition and protect the integrity of the contents, so food is not exposed to adulteration or potential contaminants. You must discard cans that are leaking, bulging, or rusted.

(j) When you serve an infant or toddler:

   (1) If the child is capable of sitting up, you must serve food on plates, napkins, or other sanitary holders, such as a high chair tray; and
   (2) You must not serve foods that present a risk of choking.

(k) When you prepare a meal at the operation, the food preparation area must be in a separate space from the eating, play, and bathroom areas.

(l) Fruits and vegetables must be properly washed before use.

(m) Food must be thawed in the refrigerator, in cold water in a leak-proof bag, or in the microwave.

(n) Food must be protected from contamination.

(o) You must keep raw meat, poultry, fish, and their juices away from other food. After cutting raw meat, you must wash your hands, the cutting board, the knife, and the countertops with hot, soapy water. You must sanitize cutting boards by using a solution of one-teaspoon chlorine bleach in one quart of water.

(p) You must maintain hot food at 140 degrees Fahrenheit or above.

(q) You must refrigerate perishable food at proper temperatures:

   (1) Within one hour after use when the temperature is above 90 degrees Fahrenheit; or
   (2) Otherwise, within two hours.

(r) Uneaten food from a person’s plate must not be served again or used in the preparation of other dishes.

(s) You must not permit animals to be in the area of food storage, food preparation, and dining.

(t) This rule does not apply to cottage homes.
§748.3443. What are the requirements for storing food?  

Subchapter P, Physical Site  
Division 5, Food Preparation, Storage, and Equipment  
September 2010

(a) All food items must be:

Medium (1) Covered and stored off the floor;
Medium (2) Stored on clean surfaces;
Medium-High (3) Protected from contamination;
Medium-High (4) Stored in a container that is protected from insects and rodents;
Medium (5) Refrigerated immediately after use and after meals, if the food requires refrigeration; and
Medium (6) Covered when stored in the refrigerator.

(b) You must have a thermometer in refrigerators and freezers and store:

Medium (1) Refrigerated food at 40 degrees Fahrenheit or below; and
Medium (2) Frozen food at 0 degrees Fahrenheit or below.

(c) Subsection (b) of this section does not apply to cottage homes.

Best Practice Suggestion

The following are best practices for food storage:

• Cook or freeze fresh poultry, fish, ground meats, and variety meats within 2 days and other beef, veal, lamb, or pork within 3 to 5 days;
• Wrap perishable food such as meat and poultry securely to maintain quality and to prevent meat juices from getting onto other food;
• To maintain quality when freezing meat and poultry in its original package, wrap the package again with foil or plastic wrap that is recommended for the freezer;
• Store high-acid canned foods such as tomatoes, grapefruit, and pineapple on the shelf no longer than 12 to 18 months; and
• Store low-acid canned food such as meat, poultry, fish, and most vegetables no longer than 2 to 5 years, if the can remains in good condition and has been stored in a cool, clean, and dry place.

Cold Storage Chart

These short, but safe, time limits will help keep refrigerated food from spoiling or becoming dangerous to eat. Because freezing keeps food safe indefinitely, recommended storage times are for quality only.
### Best Practice Suggestion (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Refrigerator (40°F)</th>
<th>Freezer (0°F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Milk</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bread</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EGGS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fresh, in shell</td>
<td>3 to 5 weeks</td>
<td>Do not freeze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raw yolk &amp; whites</td>
<td>2 to 4 days</td>
<td>1 year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard cooked</td>
<td>1 week</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LIQUID PASTEURIZED EGGS, EGG SUBSTITUTES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opened</td>
<td>3 days</td>
<td>Does not freeze well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unopened</td>
<td>10 days</td>
<td>1 year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mayonnaise, commercial</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerate after opening</td>
<td>2 months</td>
<td>Do not freeze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Frozen Dinners &amp; Entrees</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keep frozen until ready to eat</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 to 4 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DELI &amp; VACUUM-PACKED PRODUCTS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store-prepared (or homemade) egg, chicken, ham, tuna, &amp; macaroni salads</td>
<td>3 to 5 days</td>
<td>Does not freeze well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HOT DOGS &amp; LUNCHEON MEATS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot dogs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opened package</td>
<td>1 week</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unopened package</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LUNCHEON MEAT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opened package</td>
<td>3 to 5 days</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unopened package</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BACON &amp; SAUSAGE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacon</td>
<td>7 days</td>
<td>1 month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sausage, raw – from chicken, turkey, pork, beef</td>
<td>1 to 2 days</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoked breakfast links, patties</td>
<td>7 days</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard sausage – pepperoni, jerky sticks</td>
<td>2 to 3 weeks</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUMMER SAUSAGE LABELED “KEEP REFRIGERATED”</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opened</td>
<td>3 weeks</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unopened</td>
<td>3 months</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ham, Corned Beef</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corned beef, in pouch with pickling juices</td>
<td>5 to 7 days</td>
<td>Drained, 1 month</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Best Practice Suggestion (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Refrigerator (40°F)</th>
<th>Freezer (0°F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>HAM, CANNED, Labeled “KEEP REFRIGERATED”</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opened</td>
<td>3 to 5 days</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unopened</td>
<td>6 to 9 months</td>
<td>Do not freeze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ham, fully cooked vacuum sealed at plant, undated, unopened</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ham, fully cooked vacuum sealed at plant, dated, unopened</td>
<td>“Use-By” date on package</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HAM, FULLY COOKED</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whole</td>
<td>7 days</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>half</td>
<td>3 to 5 days</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slices</td>
<td>3 to 4 days</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HAMBURGER, GROUND, &amp; STEW MEAT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamburger &amp; stew meat</td>
<td>1 to 2 days</td>
<td>3 to 4 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground turkey, veal, pork, lamb, &amp; mixtures of them</td>
<td>1 to 2 days</td>
<td>3 to 4 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FRESH BEEF, VEAL, LAMB, PORK</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steaks</td>
<td>3 to 5 days</td>
<td>6 to 12 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chops</td>
<td>3 to 5 days</td>
<td>4 to 6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roasts</td>
<td>3 to 5 days</td>
<td>4 to 12 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variety meats – tongue, liver, heart, kidneys, chitterlings</td>
<td>1 to 2 days</td>
<td>3 to 4 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-stuffed, uncooked pork chops, lamb chops, or chicken breasts stuffed with dressing</td>
<td>1 day</td>
<td>Does not freeze well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soups &amp; Stews, Vegetable or meat added</td>
<td>3 to 4 days</td>
<td>2 to 3 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COOKED MEAT LEFTOVERS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooked meat &amp; meat casseroles</td>
<td>3 to 4 days</td>
<td>2 to 3 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gravy &amp; meat broth</td>
<td>1 to 2 days</td>
<td>2 to 3 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FRESH POULTRY</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicken or turkey, whole</td>
<td>1 to 2 days</td>
<td>1 year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicken or turkey, pieces</td>
<td>1 to 2 days</td>
<td>9 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giblets</td>
<td>1 to 2 days</td>
<td>3 to 4 months</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Best Practice Suggestion (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Refrigerator (40º F)</th>
<th>Freezer (0º F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COOKED Poultry LEFTOVERS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fried chicken</td>
<td>3 to 4 days</td>
<td>4 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooked poultry casseroles</td>
<td>3 to 4 days</td>
<td>4 to 6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pieces, plain</td>
<td>3 to 4 days</td>
<td>4 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pieces covered with broth,</td>
<td>1 to 2 days</td>
<td>6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gravy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicken nuggets, patties</td>
<td>1 to 2 days</td>
<td>1 to 3 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pizza, cooked</td>
<td>3 to 4 days</td>
<td>1 to 2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stuffing, cooked</td>
<td>3 to 4 days</td>
<td>1 month</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§748.3445. How must kitchen, dining areas, supplies, and equipment be maintained in a cottage home?

Subchapter P, Physical Site
Division 5, Food Preparation, Storage, and Equipment
September 2010

Medium-High (a) All food and drinks must be of safe quality and must be stored, prepared, and served under sanitary and safe conditions.

Medium-High (b) You must keep furniture, equipment, food contact surfaces, and other areas where food is prepared, eaten, or stored clean and in good repair.

(c) Persons who handle food and/or eating utensils for the group must:

Medium-High (1) Maintain personal cleanliness;

Medium-High (2) Keep hands clean at all times;

Medium-High (3) Be free of infections commonly transmitted through the handling of food or drink and free of communicable diseases; and

Medium-High (4) Minimize food contamination through the use of utensils.

Medium-High (d) Food must be protected from contamination.

(e) When you serve an infant or toddler:

Medium (1) If the child is capable of sitting up, you must serve food on plates, napkins, or other sanitary holders, such as a high chair tray; and

High (2) You must not serve food that presents a risk of choking.

Medium (f) Utensils and containers intended for one-time use, such as paper and plastic dishes, must not be used more than once.
Division 6, Play Equipment and Safety Requirements

§748.3471. What are the minimum safety requirements for outdoor equipment?

You must ensure that outdoor equipment and supplies at the operation are safe for the children as follows:

1. The outdoor activity space must be arranged, so caregivers can adequately supervise children at all times;

2. The design, scale, and location of the equipment must be appropriate for the body size and ability of the children using the equipment;

3. Equipment must not have openings that can entrap a child’s body or body part that has penetrated the opening;

4. Equipment must not have protrusions or openings that can entangle something around a child’s neck or a child’s clothing;

5. Equipment must be securely anchored according to manufacturer’s specifications to prevent collapsing, tipping, sliding, moving, or overturning;

6. All anchoring devices must be placed below the level of the playing surface to prevent tripping or injury resulting from a fall;

7. Equipment must not have exposed pinch, crush, or shear points on or underneath it;

8. You must not install climbing equipment, swings, or slides over asphalt or concrete, unless the asphalt or concrete is covered with properly installed unitary surfacing materials as specified in this subchapter;

9. Outdoor platforms more than 20 inches in height for children five years old and younger, and more than 30 inches in height for school-age children, must be equipped with guardrails that surround the elevated surface, except for entrances and exits, and that prevent children from crawling over or through the guardrail;

10. The height of the highest play surface or platform cannot be more than eight feet; and

11. Stairs and steps on outdoor climbing equipment, regardless of height, must have well-secured handrails on both sides of stairs and steps that the children can reach. Rung ladders do not require handrails.

§748.3473. How high must platform guardrails be?

Guardrails and protective barriers must be at least:

1. 29 inches high for pre-kindergarten or younger children; and

2. 38 inches high for school-age children.
§748.3475. What special maintenance procedures must I follow for my playground?

(a) Your administrator or designee must inspect the playground weekly to ensure no hazards are present. Your administrator or designee must inspect the equipment and surfacing material for:

1. Normal wear and tear;
2. Broken or missing parts;
3. Debris or foreign objects;
4. Drainage problems; or
5. Other hazards, such as tripping hazards, like exposed concrete footings, tree stumps, and rocks.

(b) Your administrator or designee must:

1. Ensure that hazards or defects identified during the inspection are removed or repaired promptly; and
2. Arrange for protection of the children or prohibit use of the equipment until the hazards or defects can be removed or repaired.

§748.3477. What are the specific safety requirements for swings?

(a) All swing seats must be constructed of durable, lightweight, rubber or plastic material.

(b) Edges of all swing seats must be smooth or rounded and have no protrusions.

(c) Swings must not be attached to a composite play structure (a playscape or structure containing equipment for a variety of activities).

(d) Only children under four years old may use a bucket swing, and only if an adult is present to lift and secure the child into the swing. The distance between the protective surfacing and the bottom of a bucket swing must be at least 24 inches to minimize the likelihood of unsupervised young children climbing into the swing.

(e) Tire swings must:

1. Not be made from heavy truck tires, or tires with exposed steel-belted radials;
2. Not be suspended from a composite play structure (a playscape or structure containing equipment for a variety of activities) or with other swings in the same swing bay;
3. Have drainage holes drilled in the underside of the tire and maintained to facilitate water drainage; and
4. Have a minimum clearance between the seating surface of a tire swing and the uprights of the supporting structure of 30 inches or more when the tire is in a position closest to the support structure.
§748.3479. May I have indoor equipment such as climbing equipment or platforms?  

Subchapter P, Physical Site  
Division 6, Play Equipment and Safety Requirements  
January 2007

You may have indoor climbing equipment if you comply with the following safety standards:

Medium-High  (1) Floor surfaces under indoor climbing equipment and platforms over 20 inches in height must have a unitary surface that will effectively cushion the fall of a child. The surface must be installed in the use zone and maintained according to the manufacturer’s directions. Carpeting alone, even if it is installed over thick padding, is not an acceptable surface under indoor climbing equipment.

Medium-High  (2) Stairs and steps on indoor climbing equipment, regardless of height, must have well-secured handrails on both sides of stairs and steps that the children can reach. Rung ladders do not require handrails.

Medium-High  (3) Platforms, including stairs and steps, over 20 inches in height must be equipped with protective barriers that prevent young children from crawling over or falling through the barrier, or becoming entrapped.

§748.3481. If my operation was previously granted a permit by Licensing, will I be given additional time to comply with the requirements of this division?  

Subchapter P, Physical Site  
Division 6, Play Equipment and Safety Requirements  
January 2007

Medium-High  If we granted you a permit prior to January 2007, then you have five years from January 2007, to comply with the requirements specified in this division. However, during this five-year period, you must ensure that the outdoor equipment is safe, sturdy, and in good repair.

Division 7, Playground Use Zones

§748.3521. What does the term “use zone” mean?  

Subchapter P, Physical Site  
Division 7, Playground Use Zones  
January 2007

(no weight)  (a) The use zone is the surface area under and around a piece of playground equipment and platforms onto which a child falling from or exiting from the equipment would be expected to land.

Medium-High  (b) Other than the equipment itself, the use zone must be free of obstacles that a child could run into or fall on top of and be injured.
§748.3523. How do I measure the use zone for stationary equipment?

(a) The use zone for stationary equipment, excluding slides, must extend a minimum of six feet in all directions from the perimeter of the equipment.

(b) Use zones for stationary equipment must not overlap the use zones of any other equipment.

§748.3525. How do I measure the use zone for slides?

(a) The use zone in front of the access and to the sides of a slide must extend a minimum of six feet from the perimeter of the equipment.

(b) The use zone in front of the exit of a slide must extend a minimum of six feet.

(c) The use zone in front of the slide exit must not overlap the use zone of any other equipment.

§748.3527. How do I measure the use zone for to-fro swings?

(a) The use zone to the front and back of to-fro swings (single-axis swings) must extend twice the height of the suspending bar to the protective surfacing below.

(b) The use zone to the front and back of the to-fro swing must not overlap the use zone of any other equipment.

(c) The use zone around the sides of the to-fro swing structure (frame which supports the swings) must be at least six feet and may overlap the use zone of an adjacent swing structure.

§748.3529. How do I measure the use zone for tire swings?

(a) The use zone for tire swings or other multi-axis swings must extend in all directions for a distance equal to the height of the suspending bar to the top of the sitting surface of the tire, plus six feet.

(b) The use zone on the sides of the tire swing support structure must be at least six feet and may overlap the use zone on the sides of an adjacent swing support structure.
§748.3531. How do I measure the use zone for bucket swings?

Subchapter P, Physical Site
Division 7, Playground Use Zones
January 2007

Medium-High (a) The use zone to the front and rear of the bucket swing must extend twice the height from the swing beam to the top of the swing-sitting surface.

Medium-High (b) The use zone specified in subsection (a) of this section must not overlap any other use zone.

Medium-High (c) The use zone on the sides of the bucket swing structure must be at least six feet and may overlap the use zone on the sides of an adjacent swing support structure.

§748.3533. How do I measure the use zone for rotating or rocking equipment or for track rides?

Subchapter P, Physical Site
Division 7, Playground Use Zones
January 2007

Medium-High (a) The use zone for rotating or rocking equipment on which the child sits must be at least six feet from the perimeter when not in use.

Medium-High (b) The use zone for rotating or rocking equipment or track rides on which the child stands or rides must be at least seven feet from the perimeter of the equipment when not in use.

Medium-High (c) The use zone for rocking and rotating equipment must not overlap any other use zone.

§748.3535. If my operation was previously granted a permit by Licensing, will I be given additional time to comply with the requirements of this division?

Subchapter P, Physical Site
Division 7, Playground Use Zones
January 2007

(no weight) If we granted you a permit prior to January 2007, then you have five years from January 2007, to comply with the requirements specified in this division.
Division 8, Protective Surfacing

§748.3561. Where must I install protective surfacing?

You must install protective surfacing in use zones identified in Division 7 of this subchapter (relating to Playground Use Zones).

§748.3563. What are the requirements of protective surfacing for use zones?

(a) There must be loose-fill surfacing material or unitary surfacing material in the use zones for all climbing, rocking, rotating, bouncing, or moving equipment, slides, and swings. Loose-fill surfacing materials include loose particles such as sand, pea gravel, shredded wood products, and shredded rubber.

(b) You must not install loose-fill surfacing materials over concrete or asphalt.

(c) If you use loose-fill surfacing materials, you must install nine inches or more of uncompressed loose-fill material in the use zones.

(d) You must ensure nine inches of the loose-fill materials are maintained at all times.

(e) You must mark all equipment support posts to indicate the depth at which the loose-fill surfacing material must be maintained.

(f) If you use unitary materials, they must be installed and maintained according to manufacturer’s specifications. Unitary surfacing materials are manufactured materials including rubber tiles, mats, or poured-in-place materials cured to form a unitary shock-absorbing surface.

(g) Unitary materials may be installed over concrete or asphalt only if recommended by the manufacturer.

§748.3565. What documentation must I keep at the operation if I use unitary surfacing materials?

(a) If you use unitary surfacing materials, you must have test data from the manufacturer showing:

   (1) The impact rating of the material (the maximum height of equipment that may be installed over the surfacing material); and

   (2) Installation and maintenance requirements.

(b) This documentation must be at the operation and available for review by Licensing staff upon request.
§748.3567. If my operation was previously granted a permit by Licensing, will I be given additional time to comply with the requirements of this division?

If we granted you a permit prior to January 2007, then you have five years from January 2007, to comply with the requirements specified in this division.

Division 9, Swimming Pools, Wading/Splashing Pools, and Hot Tubs

§748.3601. What are the requirements for swimming pools that a child uses?

If a swimming pool with more than two feet of water is used in an activity sponsored by you, then the swimming pool, either at or away from your operation, must meet the following criteria:

1. At least two life-saving devices must be available, such as a reach pole, backboard, buoy, or a safety throw bag with a brightly colored buoyant rope or throw line;
2. One additional life-saving device must be available for each 2,000 square feet of water surface, so a pool of 2,000 square feet would require three life saving devices;
3. Drain grates, vacuum outlets, and skimmer covers must be in place, in good repair, and unable to be removed without using tools;
4. Pool chemicals and pumps must be inaccessible to all children;
5. Machinery rooms must be locked when any child is present;
6. All parts of the swimming pool must be clearly visible;
7. The bottom of the pool must be visible at all times;
8. Pool covers must be completely removed prior to pool use and must not present an entrapment hazard;
9. All indoor/outdoor areas within 50 feet of the pool must be free of furniture and equipment that a child could use to scale a fence or barrier or release a lock; and
10. Swimming area rules and emergency procedures must be posted at the swimming area and explained to the children.
§748.3603. What are the additional requirements for a swimming pool located at my operation?

High (a) The swimming pool must be built and maintained according to the standards of the Department of State Health Services and any other applicable state or local regulations.

High (b) An adult must be present who is able to immediately turn off the pump and filtering system when any child is in a pool.

High (c) If the pool is aboveground, it must meet all pool safety requirements specified in this subchapter and have a barrier that prevents a child’s unauthorized access to the pool.

High (d) Outdoor swimming pools must be enclosed with a six-foot fence or wall that prevents children’s access to the pool. It must be constructed, so the fence or wall does not obscure the pool from view.

High (e) Doors, operable windows, or gates of living quarters must not be part of the pool enclosure for outdoor swimming pools.

High (f) Fence gates leading to the outdoor pool area must have self-closing and self-latching hardware located at least 60 inches from the ground and must be locked when the pool is not in use. An indoor swimming pool must be secured at all times to prevent children’s access to the pool when a lifeguard is not on duty.

High (g) Fence gates must open outward away from the pool and must not be propped open.

High (h) The space between the ground and the bottom of the fence must not exceed four inches.

Medium-High (i) When a fence is made of horizontal and vertical slats, the horizontal slats must be located on the swimming pool side of the fence.

High (j) Doors from the operation leading to the pool area must have a lock that can only be opened by an adult.

Medium-High (k) The doors and fence gates leading to or through the pool area must not be designated as fire and emergency evacuation exits.

High (l) If you have a pool on the premises of your operation and we granted you a permit before January 2007, then you have five years from January 2007, to comply with the specific requirements of this rule. However, during this five-year period, you must ensure:

(1) Children do not have unsupervised access to the pool; and

(2) There is an adult present who is able to immediately turn off the pump and filtering system when children are swimming.
§748.3605. What are the safety requirements for wading/splashing pools at my operation?

Subchapter P, Physical Site
Division 9, Swimming Pools, Wading/Splashing Pools, and Hot Tubs
January 2007

(a) Wading/splashing pools (two feet of water or less) at your operation must be:

- Medium-High (1) Stored out of children’s reach, when not in use;
- Medium-High (2) Drained at least daily and sanitized; and
- Medium-High (3) Stored, so they do not hold water.

(b) A portable wading pool must not be placed on concrete or asphalt.

§748.3607. What are the requirements for a hot tub?

Subchapter P, Physical Site
Division 9, Swimming Pools, Wading/Splashing Pools, and Hot Tubs
September 2010

A hot tub must be:

(1) Enclosed per the requirements in §748.3603 of this title (relating to What are the additional requirements for a swimming pool located at my operation?); or

(2) Covered with a locking cover when not in use.
Subchapter Q, Recreation Activities

Division 1, General Requirements

§748.3701. What are my responsibilities for providing opportunities for recreational activities and physical fitness?

You must provide daily indoor and outdoor recreational and other activities appropriate to the needs, interests, and abilities of the children, so every child may participate.

You must have a written plan for ensuring that a range of indoor and outdoor recreational and leisure opportunities are provided for children in care.

Except for a child who has written medical orders to the contrary, your programs for non-ambulatory children must include:

(1) Physical fitness development that prescribes a variety of body positions; and

(2) Changes in environment.

Each child must have individual free time as appropriate to the child’s age and abilities.

You must provide the follow types of recreational activities based on each individual child’s needs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Service</th>
<th>Items that must be included</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| (1) Child-care services | (A) Ensure that opportunities to participate in community activities, such as school sports or other extracurricular school activities, religious activities, or local social events, are available to the child; and  
(B) Organize community activities, religious activities, or local social events that are available to the child. | Medium-Low  |
| (2) Treatment services  | (A) Meet the requirements in paragraph (1)(A) of this chart;  
(B) Ensure that each child receiving treatment services has an individualized recreation plan designed by the service planning team or professionals who are qualified to address the child’s individual needs, that the plan is implemented, and that the plan is revised by the service planning team or qualified professionals, as needed; and  
(C) Ensure that medical and physical support are given if the recreational and leisure-time activities require it for a child who is receiving treatment services for primary medical needs, pervasive developmental disorder, or mental retardation. | Medium-Low  |
§748.3703. What are the requirements for recreational areas and equipment?  
You must provide indoor and outdoor recreational areas and equipment for stimulating children in appropriate recreational activities. The activities must be in sufficient variety and quantity, so every child may participate and have some choice of activities.

§748.3705. What are higher risk recreational activities?  
Higher risk recreational activities are activities that present a greater potential of injury to the child and involve special technical skill, equipment, or safety regulations for participation, including using all-terrain vehicles, swimming and water activities, watercraft activities, riding horses, wilderness hiking and camping excursions, trampoline use, and using weapons, firearms, explosive materials, and projectiles.

§748.3707. Does Licensing regulate higher risk recreational activities?  
Licensing only regulates activities that are sponsored or conducted by the operation, including higher risk recreational activities.

§748.3709. What are the requirements when children participate in a higher risk recreational activity?  
You must meet the following requirements when children participate in a higher risk recreational activity:

(1) There must be a person that is responsible for and supervises the higher risk recreational activity;

(2) When the person supervising the higher risk recreational activity is an employee of the operation, the supervising employee must:

(A) Determine each participant’s experience and skill level; and

(B) Take this information into account in supervising and assigning equipment or animals to children;  
(continued)
(3) Continue to meet the child/caregiver ratios and appropriately supervise the children at all times. If the person supervising the higher risk recreational activity is not a caregiver with the operation, then that person cannot be counted in the child/caregiver ratio. For additional requirements for child/adult ratios for swimming activities, see Division 2 of this subchapter (relating to Swimming Activities); and

(4) You must provide children with equipment that is appropriate to the activity, properly sized and adjusted where applicable, and in good condition.

**Best Practice Suggestion**

It is recommended that children wear a properly fitted helmet appropriate for the activity when participating in the following higher risk activities: bicycling, horseback riding, outdoor in-line skating and skateboarding, white-water kayaking, snow skiing or snow boarding, tackle football, riding on an all-terrain vehicle, or baseball, softball, and tee-ball when batting. In addition to wearing a helmet for in-line skating, it is suggested that children wear wrist and elbow guards, and kneepads. In addition to wearing a helmet for horseback riding, it is suggested that children be appropriately dressed, including shoes or boots, snug clothing, and long pants. It is recommended that barns, stables, corrals or other structures used to house horses or other animals be at least 100 feet away from any sleeping, eating or food preparation area, or body of water to prevent contamination.

Chapter 768 of the Texas Health and Safety Code outlines specific requirements for children who participate in rodeos, including wearing protective gear. Operations need to be aware of the requirements of this law if children in their care participate in rodeos.

### §748.3711. Who must supervise a higher risk recreational activity?

*Subchapter Q, Recreation Activities*

*Division 1, General Requirements*

January 2007

(a) The higher risk recreational activity must be supervised by a person:

| Medium | Knowledgeable about safety precautions for the type of higher risk recreational activity being performed; and |
| Medium | Who has the appropriate experience, training, and/or certification in the activity. |
| Medium-Low | If the person supervising a higher risk recreational activity is an employee of the operation, you must document these qualifications in the employee’s personnel record. |
§748.3713. What duties are required for a person supervising higher risk recreational activities?

A person supervising higher risk recreational activities must:

1. Be present at the site of the activity whenever the activity is being carried out;
2. Facilitate training or experience for other persons working in the activity to prepare them for foreseeable risks;
3. Assign duties to other persons working in the activity;
4. Ensure there is a person at the site of the activity that has a current first-aid and CPR certificate when the activity is in progress;
5. Ensure that all necessary equipment is complete, in good repair, and safe to use;
6. Ensure there is a first-aid kit located at the site of the activity that contains appropriate and sufficient equipment for the type of activity and number of participants;
7. Obtain information on weather and travel conditions before a trip or activity that is outdoors;
8. Develop a plan for action in case of emergencies relevant to the terrain and activity, including lost participants, injuries, and illnesses and communicate the plan to other persons working on the activity;
9. Consider each participant’s age, physical condition, and experience, as well as the season and weather trends;
10. Ensure that risk factors are explained to the child prior to the activity, and that the child has an opportunity to decline participation; and
11. Instruct children on the safety precautions and proper use of relevant items or animals. This must be done before access to the item or animal is allowed.

§748.3719. May children in care use all-terrain vehicles?

(a) A child in care may not ride on or operate a three-wheel all-terrain vehicle.
(b) Only a child 16 years or older may ride on or operate a four-wheel all-terrain vehicle.

Helpful Information

The intent of this rule is to limit children’s use of all-terrain vehicles for sport or recreation, due to safety concerns. This rule is not intended to limit the safe and appropriate use of utility vehicles, golf carts, riding lawn mowers, etc.
Division 2, Swimming Activities

§748.3751. Must a certified lifeguard be on duty during a swimming activity?

(a) A certified lifeguard must supervise children at all times during a swimming activity involving a body of water two feet deep or more which occurs at your operation.

(b) At all times during a swimming activity involving a body of water two feet deep or more which occurs away from your operation:

(1) If there are six or fewer children participating in the swimming activity, at least one adult counted in the swimming child/adult ratio must be able to swim or must be trained to carry out a water rescue; and

(2) If more than six children are participating in the swimming activity, a certified lifeguard must also be on duty.

(c) A child in your care who is a certified lifeguard may act as the lifeguard if he is:

(1) At least 16 years old; and

(2) Not counted as an adult or caregiver in the required child/adult swimming ratio.

§748.3753. What must a certified lifeguard’s training consist of?

A certified lifeguard’s training must:

(1) Be provided through a recognized organization;

(2) Be taught by a certified instructor; and

(3) Award a valid lifeguard certificate or its equivalent documenting successful completion of the training. The certificate does not have to use the term “lifeguard,” but you must be able to document that the certificate represents the type of training required in supervision, rescue techniques, life saving, and water safety.

§748.3755. Where must a certified lifeguard be positioned when supervising children who are swimming?

The lifeguard must be located in a position to observe all swimmers and to respond to emergencies.
§748.3757. What are the child/adult ratios for swimming activities?

(a) The maximum number of children one adult can supervise during swimming activities is based on the age of the youngest child in the group and is specified in the following chart:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the age of the youngest child is...</th>
<th>Then you must have one adult to supervise every (number) child/ren in the group</th>
<th>Swimming Child/Adult Ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 to 23 months old</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 years old</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 years old</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 years old</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 years old or older</td>
<td>You must meet the applicable child/caregiver ratios as provided in §748.1003 of this title (relating to For purposes of the child/caregiver ratio, how many children can a single caregiver care for during the children’s waking hours?).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) In addition to meeting the required swimming child/adult ratio listed in subsection (a) of this section, if four or more children are engaged in swimming activities, then there must be at least two adults to supervise the children.

(c) When a child who is non-ambulatory or who is subject to seizures is engaged in swimming activities, you must assign one adult to that one child. This adult must be in addition to the lifeguard on duty in the swimming area. You do not have to meet this requirement if a licensed physician writes orders in which the physician determines that the child:

(1) Is at low risk of seizures and that special precautions are not needed; or
(2) Only needs to wear an approved life jacket while swimming and additional special precautions are not needed.

§748.3759. May I count the certified lifeguard in the swimming child/adult ratio?

A lifeguard who is supervising the area where the children are swimming may be counted in the child/adult ratio except as specified in §748.3751(c) of this title (relating to Must a certified lifeguard be on duty during a swimming activity?). The lifeguard must never be left alone with any of the children unless the lifeguard is also a qualified caregiver for your operation.
§748.3763. May I include volunteers or employees who do not meet minimum qualifications for caregivers in the swimming child/adult ratio?

To meet the swimming child/adult ratio, you may include adult volunteers and employees of the operation who do not meet the minimum qualifications for caregivers, providing you:

High (1) Maintain enough caregivers to meet the ratios required in Subchapter G of this chapter (relating to Child/Caregiver Ratios); and

High (2) Ensure compliance with all other rules of this chapter, including rules relating to supervision and discipline.

§748.3765. What are the requirements for a child’s access to a body of water?

High (a) You must use prudent judgment and ensure children in your care are protected from unsupervised access to a body of water such as a swimming pool, hot tub, pond, river, lake, or creek.

High (b) Prior to any activity regarding a body of water, you must explain the dangers of the body of water and the rules governing the activity to the children in a manner that each child can understand.

(c) If you allow a child to swim in a body of water:

High (1) The supervising adult must clearly designate the swimming areas;

Medium-High (2) You must meet the swimming child/adult ratios; and

Medium-High (3) If more than six children are participating in the activity, you must have life-saving equipment present at all times that is sufficient to reach and rescue the child, such as a safety throw bag with a brightly colored 50-foot buoyant rope or a rescue boat equipped with a reach pole and a buoy.

§748.3767. May I use a stock tank as a pool for a swimming activity?

High No. You may not use a stock tank used by livestock for a swimming activity.
Division 3, Watercraft Activities

§748.3801. What watercraft activities do the rules of this division apply to?

The rules of this division apply to water activities:

1. In which more than six children participate; and
2. That involve boats, canoes, kayaks, sailboats, rafts, jet skis, or inflatable tubes.

§748.3803. What are the requirements for watercraft activities?

(a) A non-swimmer must wear a life vest.

(b) At least two adults able to swim and carry out a water rescue must be at the shoreline and/or on the water to respond to emergencies any time children are on the water during watercraft activities.

**Best Practice Suggestion**

The following are best practice recommendations regarding watercraft activities:

- The activity supervisor should run or scout a river prior to taking children on the water, ensure that caregivers have experience on the class of waters to be traveled, ensure that caregivers hold a current Standard First Aid Certificate or equivalent, and ensure that caregivers have training in hypothermia;

- There should be a warning device that can be readily heard by persons in the boats that must indicate the need for them to return to the shore. There should be a rescue boat available at the river or lake where boating activities take place. This rescue boat should be in good repair and contain a buoy or a safety throw bag with brightly colored 50-foot buoyant rope or throw line and a reach pole. When canoeing or rafting, the rescue boat should have an extra paddle or oar; and

- Watercraft should not enter a swimming area when swimmers are in the water or use the swimming area as a watercraft docking area unless it is an emergency and the watercraft is man-powered. Water skiers should not launch or stop in the swimming area.
§748.3805. What considerations must the watercraft activity supervisor take into account prior to the implementation of the activity?

The supervisor of the watercraft activity must:

Medium-High (1) Assess the skill and swimming ability of each child prior to the activity;
Medium-High (2) Accompany children on any trip;
Medium-High (3) Determine if an adult must be in the boat with the child or children; and
Medium-High (4) Take into account hazards, such as the size of the body of water, the skill and swimming ability of the children, the air temperature, the conditions of the water, and the temperature of the water when determining:

Medium-High (A) Whether to permit children to participate in a watercraft activity;
Medium-High (B) The experience and number of adults necessary; and
Medium-High (C) Whether or not each child must wear a life vest.

§748.3807. What are the requirements for watercraft equipment?

(a) The watercraft and all equipment must be kept in good repair at all times.
(b) You must meet the watercraft requirements of Texas Parks and Wildlife, if applicable.

Division 4, Wilderness Hiking and Camping Excursions

§748.3841. What are the requirements for hiking or camping excursions?

When you participate in a hiking or camping activity in an area unfamiliar to the participating adults, and the hiking activity lasts more than two hours:

(1) The person qualified to supervise the hiking or camping excursion must consider the following when selecting the area for hiking or camping:

Medium (A) Evacuation;
Medium (B) Communication; and
Medium (C) Water quality and quantity;
Medium (2) The person qualified to supervise the hiking or camping excursion must have experience leading a group in hiking or camping at the elevation, terrain, and climate where the activity is to take place;

(continued)
(3) Before participation, the caregivers and children must receive instruction on:

Medium
(3A) The fundamental safety procedures for the area where the hiking or camping will occur;

Medium
(3B) Procedures to follow if the participant gets lost;

Medium
(3C) Proper health and sanitation procedures;

Medium
(3D) Potential high-risk areas where the hiking or camping will occur; and

Medium
(3E) Fire risks;

Medium
(4) The emergency medical care consent forms must be readily accessible to the caregivers accompanying them;

Medium-High
(5) Caregivers participating in the hiking or camping activity must regularly monitor and care for the health and safety of children; and

Medium-Low
(6) If the excursion will be on private land, you must have an agreement with the person responsible for that land.

**Best Practice Suggestion**

The following are suggestions for when a child is in or around a grassy, wooded area while camping, hiking or participating in any other outdoor activity, especially in the months between April and October:

- **Cover arms and legs.** Have the child wear a long-sleeved shirt, and tuck his pants into his socks.

- **Wear a hat** to help keep ticks away from the scalp. Keep long hair pulled back.

- **Wear light-colored clothing** to make it easier to spot ticks.

- **Wear enclosed shoes or boots.** Avoid wearing sandals in an area where ticks may live.

- **Use insect repellent.** Products with DEET are effective against ticks and can be used on the skin. However, large amounts of DEET can be harmful to the child if it is absorbed through the skin. Look for products that contain no more than 30 percent DEET. Wash the DEET off with soap and water when your child returns indoors. Products with permethrin can be used on clothing, but cannot be applied to the skin.

- **Stay on cleared trails whenever possible.** Avoid wandering from a trail or brushing against overhanging branches or shrubs.

- **After coming indoors, check for ticks.** This will only take a few minutes. Ticks often hide behind the ears or along the hairline. It may take up to 48 hours for a person to become infected, so removing any ticks soon after they have attached themselves can help reduce the chances of becoming infected.

Removing leaves and keeping your yard clear of brush and tall grass may reduce the number of ticks. You may wish to talk to a licensed professional pest control expert about other steps you can take to reduce ticks in your yard.
§748.3843. What are the requirements for monitoring children’s safety and health during hiking or camping excursions?

Caregivers participating in the hiking or camping activity must ensure that:

1. Each child has the clothing, equipment, and provisions necessary to protect the child from the environment, including insect repellent and sunscreen;
2. A child does not carry a load of more than 30% of the child’s body weight;
3. Hiking does not exceed the physical capabilities of the weakest member of the group. If a participating child cannot or will not hike, the group must not continue unless other provisions have been made to care for the child;
4. In temperatures above 80 degrees Fahrenheit:
   - Children are offered a minimum of three quarts of drinking water per day;
   - Electrolyte replacement is available to children at all times; and
   - Other techniques are available to cool a participant, such as water to coat a child’s body or cold packs; and
5. Potable water is available at each campsite. Caregivers must verify water cache location information before the group leaves camp each day, if applicable.

§748.3845. What type of itinerary must I have for hiking or camping excursions?

(a) For hiking or camping excursions that last for over five hours, you must have an itinerary prepared prior to departure, including the:
   1. Time of departure and anticipated time of return;
   2. Destination; and
   3. Travel route.

(b) For hiking or camping excursions that last overnight, each point of the itinerary must also identify:
   1. Sources of emergency care, such as hospitals, police, and forest service offices;
   2. Methods of communicating with sources of emergency care; and
   3. Date and time of departure and anticipated date and time of return.

(c) The caregivers on the excursion must:
   1. Follow the itinerary as closely as possible; and
   2. Notify the operation of any change, when possible.
§748.3847. Where must the itinerary be kept?
Subchapter Q, Recreation Activities
Division 4, Wilderness Hiking and Camping Excursions
January 2007

Medium  (a) You must keep a copy of the itinerary on file at the operation.
Medium-Low  (b) If the excursion is on land governed by the national or state forest service, then
you must also provide the service’s office with a copy of the itinerary.

§748.3849. What are the requirements for shelter during an overnight excursion?
Subchapter Q, Recreation Activities
Division 4, Wilderness Hiking and Camping Excursions
January 2007

(a) During an overnight excursion, you must provide each child with:

Medium  (1) Adequate shelter, such as a tent, tarp, or cabin; and
Medium  (2) Reasonable insulation from cold and dampness by such things as a rain fly,
ground cloth, and an insulated pad under bedrolls or sleeping bags.

(b) Open air sleeping is allowable if:

Medium-Low  (1) The weather permits;
Medium-Low  (2) The child consents; and
Medium-Low  (3) You provide a ground cloth and an insulated pad under bedrolls or sleeping
bags.

§748.3851. What are the requirements for bed equipment used during an overnight excursion?
Subchapter Q, Recreation Activities
Division 4, Wilderness Hiking and Camping Excursions
January 2007

You must provide each child with:

Medium-Low  (1) An individual bed, bedroll, or sleeping bag;
Medium-Low  (2) Extra linens as needed for the child’s warmth and comfort, such as a blanket;
Low  (3) Clean bed linens that are changed as often as needed for cleanliness and
sanitation, but not less than once a week, if applicable; and
Low  (4) Provisions for proper laundering of bedrolls and sleeping bags between trips or
between uses by different individuals.
§748.3853. What are the specific requirements for storing food during a hiking or camping excursion?

Subchapter Q, Recreation Activities  
Division 4, Wilderness Hiking and Camping Excursions  
January 2007

Medium-Low  (a) You may only use foods capable of being maintained in a wholesome condition with the available equipment.

Medium  (b) You must refrigerate perishable food when possible.

Medium  (c) If you use an ice chest to refrigerate food during the excursion, you must provide adequate ice at all times.

Medium-Low  (d) You must drain ice chests to prevent accumulation of water from melted ice.

Medium  (e) You may not store meat and other highly perishable foods for more than 24 hours.

Medium-High  (f) You must discard any contaminated foods.

**Best Practice Suggestion**

The following are health and safety recommendations related to cooking and food storage on hiking and camping trips.

**Keeping Food Cold:**

It is best to:

- Fill the cooler with cold or frozen foods.
- Pack foods in reverse order. The first foods packed should be the last foods used, except that raw meat or poultry should be packed below ready-to-eat foods to prevent raw meat or poultry juices from dripping on the other foods.
- Take foods in the smallest quantity needed (e.g., a small jar of mayonnaise).
- In the car, put the ice chest in the air-conditioned passenger section, rather than in the trunk.
- At the campsite, insulate the cooler with a blanket, tarp, or poncho. When the camping trip is over, discard all perishable foods if there is no longer ice in the cooler or if the gel-pack is no longer frozen.

If you are planning to fish, check with the fish and game agency or state health department to see where you can fish safely, then follow these guidelines:

**Finfish:**

- Scale, gut, and clean fish as soon as they are caught.
- Live fish can be kept on stringers or in live wells, as long as they have enough water and enough room to move and breathe.
- Wrap fish, both whole and cleaned, in water-tight plastic and store on ice.
- Keep 3 to 4 inches of ice on the bottom of the cooler. Alternate layers of fish and ice.

(continued)
Best Practice Suggestion (continued)

- Store the cooler out of the sun and cover with a blanket.
- Once home, eat fresh fish within 1 to 2 days or freeze them. For top quality, use frozen fish within 3 to 6 months.

Shellfish:
- Crabs, lobsters, and other shellfish must be kept alive until cooked.
- Store in live wells or out of water in a bushel or laundry basket under wet burlap or seaweed.
- Crabs and lobsters are best eaten the day they are caught.
- Live oysters should be cooked within 7 to 10 days.
- Live mussels and clams should be cooked within 4 to 5 days.
- Eating raw shellfish is extremely dangerous. People with liver disorders or weakened immune systems are especially at risk.

Using a Food Thermometer:
If you are cooking meat or poultry on a portable stove or over a fire, you will need a way to determine when it is done and safe to eat. Color is not a reliable indicator of doneness, and it can be especially tricky to tell the color of a food if you are cooking in a wooded area in the evening.

When cooking hamburger patties on a grill or portable stove, use a digital thermometer to measure the temperature. Digital thermometers register the temperature in the very tip of the probe, so the safety of thin foods, such as hamburger patties and boneless chicken breasts, can be determined. A dial thermometer determines the temperature of a food by averaging the temperature along the stem and, therefore, should be inserted 2 to 2 ½ inches into food. If the food is thin, the probe must be inserted sideways into the food. It is critical to use a food thermometer when cooking hamburgers. Ground beef may be contaminated with E. coli O157:H7, a particularly dangerous strain of bacteria. Illnesses have occurred even when ground beef patties were cooked until there was no visible pink. The only way to insure that ground beef patties are safely cooked is to use a food thermometer, and cook the patty until it reaches 160 °F. For chicken, cook breasts or cutlets to 170 °F and legs and thighs to 180 °F. Pork should be cooked to 160 °F. Heat hot dogs and any leftover food to 165 °F. Be sure to clean the thermometer between uses.
§748.3855. What requirements must I meet for food utensils and equipment when camping?

(a) A common use drinking cup, container, or utensil must be washed with uncontaminated hot water and detergent before another person uses it.

(b) You must not use a dish, container, or utensil that is chipped, cracked, broken, damaged, or constructed so as to prevent proper cleaning and sanitizing.

(c) You must discard disposable or single-use dishes, containers, or utensils used in handling food after one use.

(d) You must store eating utensils:

   (1) Separately from foods or other materials or substances; and

   (2) In clean, dry containers.

Best Practice Suggestion

The following are best practices for food utensils and equipment when camping:

- Food utensils and equipment should be rinsed in hot water and sanitized in disinfected water. Prepare each solution daily and place it in a closed and labeled container; or

- Where group dishwashing is practiced, all food utensils should be immersed for at least two minutes in a lukewarm chlorine bath containing at least 50 ppm of available chlorine. Where chlorine is used, a three-compartment vat or three containers should be used for washing, rinsing, and immersing.

§748.3857. What parameters must I follow for drinking water during a hiking or camping excursion?

(a) Drinking water used during a hiking or camping excursion must come from a source known to be safe or must be rendered safe.

(b) An adequate supply of water, under pressure where possible, must be provided at the cooking area for hand washing, dishwashing, food preparation, and drinking.

(continued)
Best Practice Suggestion

It is recommended that drinking water be disinfected by one of the following methods:

- **Boil water for at least 1 to 15 minutes after it reaches a full boil;**
- **A water purifier;**
- **A water filter;**
- **Iodine tablets or crystals** – add five drops of iodine per quart of clear water or ten drops per quart of cloudy water, thoroughly mix the solution, and wait 30 minutes before using;
- **Chlorine dioxide tablets,** or halazone tablets used according to the manufacturer’s directions; or
- **Liquid iodine or household chlorine bleach** – add two drops of household chlorine bleach per quart of water. You must ensure the chlorine does not have an active ingredient other than 4% to 6% sodium hypochlorite. Thoroughly mix the solution and wait 30 minutes before using. If the water does not have a slight chlorine odor and taste, add two more drops of chlorine bleach and wait 15 more minutes before using.

Safe Drinking Water:

It is not a good idea to depend on fresh water from a lake or stream for drinking, no matter how clean it appears. Some pathogens thrive in remote mountain lakes or streams and there is no way to know what might have fallen into the water upstream. It is best to bring bottled or tap water for drinking, starting out with a full water bottle, and replenishing your supply from tested public systems when possible. On long trips, you should consider purifying any water taken from the wild, no matter how clean it appears.

The surest way to make water safe is to boil it. Boiling will kill microorganisms. First, bring water to a rolling boil, and then continue boiling for 1 minute. Before heating, muddy water should be allowed to stand for a while to allow the silt to settle to the bottom. Dip the clear water off the top and boil. At higher elevations, where the boiling point of water is lower, boil for several minutes.

As an alternative to boiling water, you may also wish to use water purification tablets and water filters. The purification tablets – which contain iodine, halazone, or chlorine – kill most waterborne bacteria, viruses, and some (but not all) parasites. Because some parasites are not killed by purification tablets, you should also use a water filter. These water filtering devices should be 1 micron absolute or smaller. Over time, purification tablets lose their potency, so it is important to keep your supply fresh. Water sanitizing tablets for washing dishes can also be purchased (just do not confuse the two). Water purification tablets, filters, and sanitizing tablets can be purchased at camping supply stores.
§748.3861. What are the requirements for toilet facilities during overnight camping excursions?

Low (a) If the campsite is not provided with toilet facilities, pit privies or other portable toilets, there must be separate designated areas for each gender for toilet use.

Low (b) Toilet paper must be available at all times, as needed.

(c) Privies must be located at least:

Low (1) 20 feet from any stream, lake, well, spring, or other water supply; and

Medium (2) 75 feet from the camp, tent, sleeping, or housing arrangement.

Low (d) Soap and water for hand washing must be located within 20 feet of the toilet areas.

Division 5, Trampoline Use

§748.3891. May I use a trampoline?

Medium-High (a) You may use a trampoline for individual use if it is less than four feet in diameter and no higher than 12 inches above a properly installed and maintained protective surface as defined in §748.3563 of this title (relating to What are the requirements of protective surfacing for use zones?).

(no weight) (b) You may use a trampoline as gym equipment as provided in §748.3893 of this title (relating to What are the requirements for using a trampoline as gym equipment?).

§748.3893. What are the requirements for using a trampoline as gym equipment?

You may use a trampoline for supervised training programs, such as gymnastics, diving, and other competitive sports if you meet the following requirements:

High (1) You must prohibit the use of the trampoline when there is no trampoline supervisor present;

Medium-High (2) The trampoline supervisor must have formal training and experience in the use of the trampoline and knowledge of trampoline safety and spotting techniques;

Medium-High (3) When the trampoline is in use, personal spotters must be present, ready to intervene, and posted on four sides of each trampoline;

(continued)
Medium-High (4) You must prohibit any child younger than six years old from using the trampoline, even in supervised training programs;

High (5) A safety pad must cover all portions of the steel frame and springs;

High (6) The surface around the trampoline must have an impact absorbing surface material;

Medium-High (7) Only one child at a time may use a trampoline, regardless of the size of the trampoline;

Medium-High (8) Children must not be allowed to jump off the trampoline. If the trampoline is above ground, children must dismount the trampoline by sitting on the edge and sliding off;

Medium (9) The trampoline must be secured and inaccessible when not in use;

Medium (10) The condition of the trampoline must be checked for tears, rust, and detachments at least monthly and repaired prior to its next use; and

Medium (11) The child using a trampoline must be at the center of the mat and must not attempt to do maneuvers beyond the child’s capability or training.

Best Practice Suggestion

Consider setting the trampoline in a pit so that the mat is at ground level. Safety harnesses and spotting belts, when appropriately used, may offer added protection for athletes learning or practicing more challenging skills on the trampoline.

Division 6, Weapons, Firearms, Explosive Materials, and Projectiles

§748.3931. Are weapons, firearms, explosive materials, and projectiles permitted at my operation?

Generally, weapons, firearms, explosive materials, and projectiles (such as darts or arrows), are permitted, however, there are some specific restrictions:

High (1) Handguns are not permitted at an operation or during any type of activity;

High (2) A child receiving treatment services or emergency care services is not permitted to use weapons, firearms, explosive materials, or projectiles, or toys that explode or shoot (such as fireworks or BB guns);

High (3) If you allow weapons, firearms, explosive materials, projectiles, or toys that explode or shoot, you must ensure children do not have unsupervised access to them by implementing specific precautions outlined in your policies, including locked storage and separate locked storage for the weapons and ammunition;

(continued)
(4) You must determine it is appropriate for a child receiving only child-care services to use the weapons, firearms, explosive materials, projectiles, or toys that explode or shoot; and

(5) No child may use a weapon, firearm, explosive material, projectile, or toy that explodes or shoots, unless the child is directly supervised by a qualified adult.

§748.3933. What factors must I consider when determining whether weapons, firearms, explosive materials, or projectiles are stored adequately?

When determining if these items are stored adequately, you must consider the age, history, emotional maturity, and background of the children in your care.

§748.3935. May a caregiver transport a child in a vehicle where weapons, firearms, explosive materials, or projectiles are present?

A caregiver may not transport a child in a vehicle where a handgun is present. Otherwise, a caregiver may transport a child in a vehicle where weapons, firearms, explosive materials, or projectiles are present if:

(1) The child is only receiving child-care services;

(2) All firearms are not loaded; and

(3) The weapons, firearms, explosive materials, or projectiles are inaccessible to the child.
Subchapter R, Transportation

Division 1, General Requirements

§748.4001. What types of transportation does Licensing regulate?

(a) We regulate any transportation that you provide for trips away from and to your operation.

(b) You must ensure the safety of all children during any transportation that you provide.

§748.4003. What requirements must I meet when transporting a child away from the operation?

Anytime you transport a child away from the operation, you must comply with each of the following requirements:

1. Each driver must:
   (A) Be at least 21 years old. For an exception for children in care, see §748.4005 of this title (relating to May a child in care transport other children in care?);
   (B) Be covered by automobile insurance; and
   (C) Have a current driver’s license allowing the driver to operate the type of vehicle that is used to transport children.

2. You must not transport more people than the capacity of the vehicle.

3. The vehicle must travel at a safe speed consistent with the speed limit, terrain, and weather conditions.

4. For requirements regarding firearms and transportation, see §748.3935 of this title (relating to May a caregiver transport a child in a vehicle where weapons, firearms, explosive materials, or projectiles are present?).
§748.4005. May a child in care transport other children in care?

Yes, a child in care may transport other children in care if the child:

- Has a valid driver’s license; (Medium-High)
- Is covered by automobile insurance; and (Medium-Low)
- Is given permission by the service planning team to drive and transport other children in care. (Medium)

§748.4007. What specific information and equipment must be in a vehicle I use to transport children during overnight trips away from the operation?

The following information and items must be accessible and in each vehicle you use to transport children during overnight trips:

- A list of the children being transported, which you must check in order to account for the presence of all participating children; (High)
- Emergency medical transport and treatment authorization forms for each child being transported; (High)
- A list of medications each child is currently taking, the dosage, and the frequency; (High)
- Your operation’s name and telephone number, and the administrator’s or permit holder’s name; (Medium-High)
- Parent’s names and telephone numbers and emergency telephone numbers for each child being transported; (Medium-Low)
- A fire extinguisher approved by the local or state fire marshal, secured in the passenger compartment and accessible to the adult occupants; (High)
- A first-aid kit; and (High)
- An operable flashlight. (Medium-High)

§748.4009. What plan must I have for handling transportation emergencies?

(a) You must ensure the driver and caregivers have clear instructions in handling emergency breakdowns and accidents, including vehicle evacuation procedures, supervision of the children, and contacting emergency help. (Medium-High)

(b) The administrator or designee in charge of the operation must know what action to take in responding to a transportation emergency call. (Medium-High)

(c) Emergency transportation must be available at all times. It may be provided by the operation or pre-arranged with community services. (Medium)
§748.4011. What safety precautions must I take when loading and unloading a child from the vehicle?

Subchapter R, Transportation
Division 1, General Requirements
January 2007

You must take the following precautions when loading and unloading a child from any vehicle used for transportation, including a bus with a gross vehicular weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 pounds or more:

High (1) You must account for all children exiting the vehicle before leaving the vehicle unattended.

High (2) You must not allow a child under eight years old to cross a street to enter a vehicle or after exiting a vehicle, unless an adult accompanies the child.

High (3) You must never leave a child under eight years old unattended in a vehicle.

§748.4013. What is required when my operation takes children on out-of-state overnight trips?

Subchapter R, Transportation
Division 1, General Requirements
January 2007

(a) If your operation takes children on out-of-state overnight trips, you must:

Medium (1) Develop a written itinerary and safety plan for each trip;

Medium (2) Provide necessary equipment and make provisions to meet participants’ needs on the trip; and

Medium-Low (3) Inform parents before the planned departure date, and document in the child’s record the discussion and date when this contact occurred.

Medium-Low (b) You must obtain the written permission from each child’s parent for each out-of-state trip or must obtain a general written permission from each child’s parent for any out-of-state trip in which the child will participate.

Division 2, Safety Restraints

§748.4041. What safety restraint system must I use when I transport children?

Subchapter R, Transportation
Division 2, Safety Restraints
January 2007

High (a) For all vehicles other than a bus with a GVWR of 10,000 pounds or more, you must secure each child in an infant safety seat system, child booster seat, or a seat belt, as appropriate to the child’s age, height, and weight according to manufacturer’s instructions before starting the vehicle, and during all times the vehicle is in motion.

(continued)
(b) All child passenger safety seat systems must meet federal standards for crash-tested restraint systems as set by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, and must be properly secured in the vehicle according to manufacturer’s instructions.

(c) A child 12 years old or younger must not ride in the front seat of a vehicle.

(d) The following safety restraint devices for a child must be used when the vehicle is on and when transporting children:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If the child is...</th>
<th>Then the child must be secured in...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High (1) Younger than one year old and weighs less than 20 pounds</td>
<td>an infant only safety seat or a rear-facing convertible safety seat according to the manufacturer’s instructions that come with the seat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High (2) Younger than one year old and weighs more than 20 pounds</td>
<td>a rear-facing convertible safety seat according to the manufacturer’s instructions that come with the seat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High (3) At least one year old and weighs between 20 and 40 pounds</td>
<td>a safety seat according to the manufacturer’s instructions that come with the seat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High (4) Younger than eight years old and less than four feet, nine inches in height</td>
<td>a safety seat or booster seat according to the manufacturer’s instructions that come with the seat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High (5) Younger than eight years old and at least four feet, nine inches in height</td>
<td>a booster seat according to the manufacturer’s instructions that come with the seat or a properly fitting seat belt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High (6) At least eight years old</td>
<td>a properly fitting seat belt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Best Practice Suggestion**

If a child rides in a safety belt with a shoulder harness, it is best for the shoulder harness to go across the child’s chest and not across the child’s face or neck. A lap belt should fit low across the child’s thighs or top of the legs rather than across the child’s stomach area. For safety reasons, it is important not to put a shoulder belt under the child’s arm or behind the child’s back. If the lap belt and shoulder harness do not fit properly, a booster seat is advisable.

§748.4043. Do the seat belt requirements prohibit transporting children in the bed of a pick-up truck?

Subchapter R, Transportation
Division 2, Safety Restraints
January 2007

(a) Children may be transported in the bed of a pick-up truck on the facility grounds if the following conditions are met:

 Medium-High (1) If children are being transported in the bed of a pick-up truck, children must be at least 13 years old;

 Medium-High (2) Children must be seated;

(continued)
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

Texas Department of Family and Protective Services

Medium-High

(3) No children may sit on the side of the vehicle, the tire wells, or on the tailgate;

Medium-High

(4) No children may lean against the tailgate;

Medium-High

(5) The tailgate must be securely closed while the vehicle is in motion;

Medium-High

(6) The vehicle must travel at a safe speed consistent with the terrain and weather conditions;

Medium-High

(7) The driver of the vehicle must be knowledgeable about the dangers associated with issues, such as but not limited to, sudden braking and travel over uneven terrain; and

High

(8) Open bed pick-up trucks or trailers must not be used to transport children on public roads.

High

(b) Subsection (a) of this section does not apply to hay-rides on trailer beds for special occasions as long as there is adequate adult supervision to prevent children from falling off of the trailer.

High

(c) At all other times transportation is provided by the operation, employees, or volunteers, each child must be in a safety restraint when the vehicle is in motion.

§748.4045. May I place more than one person in each seat belt or safety seat system?

Subchapter R, Transportation
Division 2, Safety Restraints
January 2007

High

No. Only one person may use each safety belt or safety seat system.

§748.4047. Must caregivers, adults, and/or the driver wear a seat belt?

Subchapter R, Transportation
Division 2, Safety Restraints
January 2007

Medium

Yes, for all vehicles other than a bus with GVWR of 10,000 pounds or more, the driver and all other adult passengers in a vehicle transporting children must be properly restrained by seat belts before starting the vehicle and at all times the vehicle is in motion.

Division 3, Vehicle and Vehicle Maintenance

§748.4081. What type of vehicle may I use to transport children?

Subchapter R, Transportation
Division 3, Vehicle and Vehicle Maintenance
January 2007

(no weight)

(a) We do not regulate the type of vehicle you may use to transport children.

Medium

(b) You must make special provisions if you transport nonambulatory children. When necessary, this may include locks for wheel chairs and hydraulic lifts.
§748.4083. What vehicle maintenance requirements must I maintain for a vehicle used for transporting children?

(a) You must maintain a vehicle in a safe operating condition at all times.

(b) Each vehicle you use must be registered and have a current inspection sticker for the state in which it is registered.

Division 4, Transportation Records

§748.4111. What transportation records must I maintain?

(a) You must maintain on file at your operation the name of each driver who transports children and a copy of a valid driver’s license for that person.

(b) You must also maintain the following:

   (1) Insurance verification in the vehicle; or

   (2) If your transportation services are provided by a private person, a firm under contract, or by another arrangement, you must maintain on file a copy of the person’s or firm’s insurance coverage.
Subchapter S, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Emergency Care Services

**Helpful Information**

Only an emergency care services program that plans to admit a specific child population requiring treatment services is required to meet treatment service requirements. Emergency care service programs which do not limit their admissions with regard to treatment service needs are not required to meet minimum standards related to treatment services.

For example, an emergency care services program specifically for children with primary medical needs is required to meet all minimum standards related to primary medical needs.

However, an emergency care services program with a broader admissions policy, able to admit children with a variety of needs, is not required to meet treatment services requirements.

In the first example, the emergency care services program knows that most or all of the children admitted will require a certain type of care. Therefore, the operation is able to plan appropriately for the required professional staff and services needed for the care of these children. In the second example, with a broader admissions policy, the emergency care services program is not able to predict the needs of children being admitted. Therefore, the operation does not have the opportunity to plan in advance to have professional staff, staff training, or services available for the specific, specialized needs of children in care.

**Division 1, Service Management**

**§748.4201. What must I do when I admit a child who cannot consent to emergency care services?**

(a) If you admit a child for emergency care services who does not meet the requirements to consent to emergency care services, you must try to contact the child’s parent(s) within 24 hours, if you know their identity and how to contact them.

(b) If you cannot contact the parent(s), you must notify the appropriate public agency (Child Protective Services, Juvenile Probation, or police department) of the child’s presence.

(c) Your operation must document in the child’s record efforts to contact the child’s parent(s) and contacts with public agencies.
§748.4203. What are the additional medical requirements when I admit a child to receive emergency care services?

Each child receiving emergency care services must receive a health screening or EPSDT examination within 72 hours after admission:

(1) A health-care professional must provide the screening examination. The health-care professional does not have to be your employee.

With the exception of EPSDT examinations, the person who does the examination must sign and date the results of the screening examination. You must document the results of the examination in the child’s record.

If a child has been in a residential child-care operation and has had a health screening in the last 12 months, the child does not have to have another health screening unless there is reason to believe the child is ill or has been abused.

If the child is coming from a medical setting, you may accept a statement from a licensed health-care professional in place of the examination.

§748.4205. What is the maximum amount of time a child receiving emergency care services may stay in care without a placement extension?

A child receiving emergency care services may stay in care without a placement extension for a maximum of 15 days.

§748.4207. What is the maximum amount of time a child receiving emergency care services may stay in care with a placement extension?

(a) If there is an appropriate reason for continuing the care, a child:

(1) Younger than five years old may continue the placement for emergency care services for up to a total of 30 days in care; and

(2) Five years old or older may continue the placement for emergency care services for up to a total of 90 days in care.

(b) If a child of any age has a parent under 18 years old admitted in the operation or has a sibling five years old or older admitted in the operation, the child may continue placement for emergency care services for the length of time the parent or sibling is receiving emergency care services if:

(1) Deemed in the best interests of the child by the service planning team; and

(2) Only for a maximum of 90 days.
§748.4209. What are the documentation requirements for a placement extension?

(a) The child’s service planning team must document the reason for the extension in the child’s record.

(b) If the parent responsible for the child has begun presenting the child’s information to different operations, agencies, or foster homes based on what the parent believes the child’s needs are and where the child’s needs can best be met, you must document in the child’s record the following verbal information that you receive from the parent:

(1) The reason(s) why a placement cannot be completed timely; and

(2) The date a placement is expected to be completed.

(c) In other situations, you must document the following information for the placement extension, as appropriate:

(1) The child has qualified for financial assistance under Chapter 31, Human Resources Code, and is on the waiting list for housing assistance; or

(2) The child meets the requirements to consent to emergency care and consents to the continuation of services to the child or the child’s offspring.

(d) You must document your efforts to contact the parent and obtain the rationale for the continuation of care, including the dates you made those efforts.

§748.4211. When must I document the appropriate reason for continuing emergency care services?

(a) You must document the reason for continuing emergency care services in the child’s record by the 16th day that the child is in care.

(b) You must include documentation of additional continuations in the child’s record every 30 days thereafter, if applicable.

(c) This documentation must be available for our review.

§748.4213. What are the requirements for a written discharge plan?

(a) If the child receives emergency care services for more than 15 days, you must have a written discharge plan for the child from the person responsible for the child.

(b) You must place the written plan in the child’s record on or before the child’s 16th day in care at your operation.

(continued)
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

(c) You must obtain written documentation from the person responsible for the child that the preliminary plan is reviewed and updated at least weekly.

(d) The preliminary plan and weekly reviews must be available for our review.

Division 2, Admission Assessment

§748.4231. What information must an admission assessment include for a child needing emergency care services, including respite child-care services?

Subchapter S, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Emergency Care Services
Division 2, Admission Assessment
September 2010

(a) An admission assessment must provide an initial evaluation of the appropriate placement of the child and must include:

(1) The child’s immediate needs;
(2) The name of the referral source;
(3) The date and time of placement;
(4) A description of the child’s condition as observed by the intake worker; and
(5) Only for emergency care services:
(A) The reason for emergency placement;
(B) The child’s understanding of the need for emergency care services; and
(C) The child’s feelings about the crisis situation and operation care.

(b) You must also obtain the following information as soon as possible after admission:

(1) The child’s identity, date of birth, and as applicable any additional information needed to determine the child’s ability to consent to emergency care services for the child or the child’s offspring. To consent to services, the child must be:
(A) The parent of a child;
(B) Pregnant; or
(C) 16 years old or older; and
   (i) Residing separate and apart from the child’s parent, regardless of whether the parent consents to the admission and duration; and
   (ii) Managing his own financial affairs, regardless of the source of income;
(2) Name, address, and telephone number of the child’s parents, if available. This information is not required if the child meets the requirements to consent to emergency care services;
(3) Medications the child is taking;

(continued)
(4) Chronic health conditions, such as asthma or diabetes; and

(5) Allergies to medication or food.

(c) If you cannot obtain the required information for an assessment:

(1) You must make reasonable efforts to obtain all required information.

(2) If attempting to get information at the time of placement would not be in the child’s best interests, you may postpone attempting to acquire the information.

(3) In the child’s admission assessment, you must document why a:

(A) Particular piece of information is unavailable; or

(B) Delay in obtaining a piece of information is necessary, including efforts made to obtain the information.

Division 3, Respite Child-Care Services

§748.4261. May I provide respite child-care services?

Subchapter S, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Emergency Care Services

Division 3, Respite Child-Care Services

January 2007

(a) Respite child-care services are not subject to regulation under this subchapter, if the:

(1) Respite child-care services are completely separate from the emergency care services. You must provide the respite child-care services in a completely separate physical space using different caregivers from the caregivers for the emergency care services; and

(2) Care does not exceed 40 days per year as outlined in §745.117(6) of this title (relating to Which programs of limited duration are exempt from Licensing regulation?).

(b) An operation that only provides emergency care services to children may provide respite child-care services, if you:

(1) Meet all applicable requirements for all services, including children admitted only for respite child-care. This includes compliance with capacity limits, child/caregiver ratios, and supervision rules; and

(2) Ensure that your respite child-care services do not present a conflict of care for any child receiving emergency care services.
§748.4263. Whom must I notify when I accept a child for respite child-care?

Subchapter S, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Emergency Care Services
Division 3, Respite Child-Care Services
January 2007

Low

You must notify the child’s parent before accepting the child for respite child-care.

§748.4265. What information regarding a child must I receive prior to providing respite child-care services to that child?

Subchapter S, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Emergency Care Services
Division 3, Respite Child-Care Services
January 2007

To ensure continuity of care, you must obtain the following information:

Medium (1) Specific needs of a child, including:

Medium-High (A) All psychiatric or medical treatment currently being provided;

Medium-High (B) Medication regimen and medication instructions;

Medium-High (C) Authorization for medical treatment; and

Medium-High (D) Any other needs of a child that should be addressed by the respite child-care services provider;

Medium (2) Non-routine events taking place in the life of the child;

Medium-High (3) Emergency contact information, including the:

Medium-High (A) Child’s physician(s);

Medium (B) Child’s parent; and

Medium-Low (C) Telephone number of the agency or operation that placed the child; and

Medium-High (4) The child’s history that may affect the operation’s ability to provide care for the child, including:

Medium-High (A) Background of abuse and/or neglect;

Medium-High (B) Physical aggression or sexual behavior problems;

Medium-High (C) Fire setting;

Medium-High (D) Maiming or killing animals;

Medium-High (E) Suicidal ideations and attempts; and

Medium-High (F) Run-away behaviors.
§748.4267. How long may a child be in respite child-care?
Subchapter S, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Emergency Care Services
Division 3, Respite Child-Care Services
January 2007

Medium-Low  (a) With the exception of subsection (b) of this section, a child may be in respite child-care for 14 consecutive days or 40 days each year.

Medium-Low  (b) A respite child-care services placement that is made because a child’s foster home is under investigation for abuse or neglect does not count toward nor is it limited by the time frames noted in subsection (a) of this section. However, these placements are limited to a maximum of 60 days.

Medium-Low  (c) If a child needs respite child-care for more than 14 consecutive days or more than 60 days for an abuse or neglect investigation, this is considered a new placement and will not be respite child-care.

Medium-Low  (d) When a child finishes a respite child-care placement, he may not return to respite child-care for at least 10 days.

Medium-High  (e) Respite child-care must not be used if it could be detrimental to the child.

Helpful Information

| The time limit of 40 days per year of respite care for each child is intended to serve the best interests of the child by minimizing disruptions in care. To that end, and in an effort to comply with these minimum standard rules, you are expected to seek out information about a child’s time spent in respite child-care at any previous placement(s) earlier in the year. You are responsible for limiting the child’s placement(s) in respite child-care accordingly for the remainder of the year. |

§748.4269. May I update an admission assessment when I provide respite child-care services to a child to whom I have already provided respite child-care?
Subchapter S, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Emergency Care Services
Division 3, Respite Child-Care Services
January 2007

(no weight)  When you admit into your respite child-care services program a child to whom you have already provided respite child-care, you may update the existing admission assessment information rather than completing a new assessment.
Subchapter T, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide an Assessment Services Program

Division 1, Regulation

§748.4301. Does Licensing regulate all assessment services?

(a) No. This subchapter only regulates general residential operations and residential treatment centers that also provide an assessment services program.

(b) Services provided by other individuals, agencies, and organizations are not subject to regulation under this subchapter.

Division 2, Admission

§748.4331. What are the requirements for approving a child’s admission into my assessment services program?

(a) The person responsible for the assessment services program must review and approve in writing the determination that your program will be able to provide or obtain all assessment services the child appears to need at intake.

(b) The review, determination, and approval must be:

(1) In writing, signed, and dated from the person responsible for the assessment services program; and

(2) Completed prior to the admission of the child into your assessment services program.

(c) The determination on the appropriateness of the program to meet the child’s assessment needs must be filed in the child’s record if the child is admitted into your assessment services program.

(d) You must document in the child’s record whether you are:

(1) Only providing assessment services to the child; or

(2) Also providing other services, such as emergency care services.

(e) You must document in the child’s record the date of the child’s admission into your assessment services program.
Division 3, Assessment Plan

§748.4361. When must I complete the child’s individual plan for the assessment?

You must complete the child’s individual plan for the assessment within 10 days from the date of the child’s admission into the program.

You must document the plan in the child’s record.

§748.4363. When does admission into the assessment services program begin?

Admission into the assessment services program begins when:

(1) The parent makes the decision to place the child into the assessment services program; and

(2) You decide to accept the child for these services.

§748.4365. What must an individual plan for the assessment include?

An individual plan for the assessment must include:

(1) Time frames for providing all assessment services;

(2) Recommendations for the child’s care during the assessment process;

(3) Any treatment to be provided during the assessment period; and

(4) Current data from the caregiver’s evaluation of the child’s behavior and level of functioning.

The common application is not and must not serve as the individual plan for the assessment.

§748.4369. How must my assessment services program collect information from a child’s caregivers?

Your assessment services program must systematically collect information from caregivers throughout the child’s participation in the assessment services program. This information includes the caregivers’ observations and opinions of the child.

You must document this information in the child’s record. Your documentation must include your consideration of the caregivers’ observations and opinions.
§748.4371. When is the plan for the assessment complete?

Subchapter T, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide an Assessment Services Program
Division 3, Assessment Plan
January 2007

(a) The plan for the assessment is complete when it contains the necessary information and the signed approval of the person responsible for the assessment services program or a designated employee who meets the qualifications of a person responsible for the assessment program.

(b) The parent must review and be provided a copy of the plan for the assessment.

Division 4, Assessment Report

§748.4391. What is an assessment report?

Subchapter T, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide an Assessment Services Program
Division 4, Assessment Report
January 2007

(a) The assessment report that is the result of the assessment services is a narrative report that pulls together data from:

1. Professional evaluation reports on the child; and

2. The program’s assessment on how the child is managing in the program.

(b) The report includes:

1. Recommendations made in other professional evaluations; and

2. Recommendations based on the program’s experiences with and assessment of the child.

(c) The common application is not and must not serve as the assessment report.

§748.4393. When must I complete the assessment report?

Subchapter T, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide an Assessment Services Program
Division 4, Assessment Report
September 2010

(a) The assessment report must be completed rapidly, consistent with good practice, in order to allow for a permanent placement as soon as possible.

(b) You must complete the assessment report within:

1. 30 days after you admit the child, if the child is younger than five years old; or

2. 45 days after you admit the child, if the child is five years old or older.

(c) With the approval of the child’s parent, you may extend the time frame for completing the report for an additional 15 days. You must document the need for the extension of time in the child’s record.

(continued)
(d) You must complete the assessment report before a planned discharge of the child from the assessment services program. However, additional assessment services may be conducted subsequent to placement if a quick placement is in the best interest of the child.

(e) You must provide a copy of the assessment report to the child’s parent as soon as the report is complete.

§748.4395. What must be included in the written assessment report?

In addition to the requirements set forth in §748.1217 of this title (relating to What information must an admission assessment include?), a written assessment report must include:

1. Copies and results of the determination of the child’s basic health and social and developmental assessment, including:
   - The child’s basic health status, as determined under the supervision of a licensed physician;
   - The child’s basic social and developmental needs, as determined under the supervision of the person responsible for the assessment services program or a designated employee who meets the qualifications for a person responsible for the assessment program;
   - Recommendations for any further assessment services and testing; and
   - An assessment of the child’s immediate and extended family in terms of an ongoing relationship with the child;

2. Copies and results of all evaluations and testing;

3. A summary of the primary caregivers’ evaluations of the child’s behavior and level of functioning;

4. An assessment of the results and summary in terms of appropriate short- and long-term planning for the child;

5. Recommendations for placement; and

6. A recommended behavior management plan based on the assessment results and the primary caregivers’ evaluations of the child’s behavior and level of functioning.
§748.4397. Who must review and approve an assessment report?
Subchapter T, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide an Assessment Services Program
Division 4, Assessment Report
January 2007

(a) The following people must review the assessment report:

- The person responsible for the assessment program or a designated employee who meets the qualifications of a person responsible for the assessment program;
- The child’s primary caregiver; and
- The child’s parent.

(b) The person responsible for the assessment program, or the designated qualified employee, must approve and sign the report.

(c) You must file the original, approved and signed assessment report, including any addendums to the report, in the child’s record.
Subchapter U, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Therapeutic Camp Services

Division 1, Definitions

§748.4401. What do certain words mean in this subchapter?
These words have the following meanings in this subchapter:

(1) Permanent camp – The permanent structure at which the basic needs for camp operation, such as resident housing, water supply and septic systems, and permanent toilet and/or cooking facilities, are provided.

(2) Permanent structure – Man-made permanent or semi-permanent structures in which groups of people live, eat, sleep, or assemble, such as dining halls, dormitories, cabins, or other structures which are not constructed to be readily movable.

(3) Primitive camp – A portion of the permanent campsites or another site at which the basic needs for camp operation, such as water supply systems, and permanent toilet and/or cooking facilities or other permanent structures, are not provided and in which a child stays no longer than 14 days before returning to the permanent camp.

§748.4403. What children are eligible to participate in a therapeutic camp program?
For a child to be eligible to participate in a therapeutic camp program, the child must:

(a) Be 13 years old or older;

(b) Be in need of treatment services for an emotional disorder; and

(c) Have difficulty functioning in his home, school, or community.

(b) Individuals that are not eligible to participate in a therapeutic camp program include:

(1) An adult;

(2) A child under 13 years old;

(3) A child who receives child-care services only, including a child in a transitional living services program;
(4) A child who is pregnant. If a child becomes pregnant while in care, you must arrange for the child’s immediate discharge or transfer from your therapeutic camp program;

(5) An adolescent parent with his or her child;

(6) A child with primary medical needs or other medical conditions that cannot be easily provided to the child at the permanent campsite or during primitive camping excursions;

(7) A child diagnosed with a Pervasive Developmental Disorders such as Autistic Disorder, Asperger’s Disorder and Rett’s Disorder;

(8) A child diagnosed with Mental Retardation;

(9) A child for an emergency admission; and

(10) A child for child day care services.

**Division 2, Activities Requiring Spotting or Belaying**

*Best Practice Suggestion*

It is best practice for an activity requiring spotting or belaying to:

- Be supervised by an employee having at least six weeks experience in a supervisory capacity with a similar type of activity;
- Have spotters and belayers that are instructed in the proper procedures prior to assuming their duties and are directly supervised until competency is demonstrated;
- Have a method established to control access to the equipment and the activity area in order to prevent unauthorized or unsupervised use by a child;
- Have safety checks of all equipment and ropes prior to each use;
- Have a safety orientation for each child prior to allowing the child to engage in the activity; and
- Have each child engaged in the activity wearing appropriate personal protective equipment.
§748.4431. What are the requirements for an adventure/challenge program that requires spotting or belaying?

Subchapter U, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Therapeutic Camp Services
Division 2, Activities Requiring Spotting or Belaying
January 2007

You must ensure that:

Medium-High
(1) An employee with at least six weeks experience in supervising a similar type of activity supervises an adventure/challenge program that requires spotting or belaying;

High
(2) Prior to assuming duty as a spotter and belayer, a person receives instruction in the proper procedures;

High
(3) A spotter or belayer is directly supervised until the person demonstrates competency;

High
(4) There is a method for controlling access to the equipment and the activity area in order to prevent unauthorized or unsupervised use by a child;

High
(5) Safety checks are performed on all equipment and ropes prior to each use;

High
(6) Each child has a safety orientation before engaging in the activity; and

High
(7) Each child wears appropriate personal protective equipment during an activity.

Division 3, Primitive Camping Excursions

§748.4461. What is considered a primitive camping excursion?

Subchapter U, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Therapeutic Camp Services
Division 3, Primitive Camping Excursions
January 2007

Medium-Low
A primitive camping excursion lasts no more than 14 days, after which children on the camping excursion must return to the permanent camp.

§748.4463. How long must children remain at the operation’s permanent camp between primitive camping excursions?

Subchapter U, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Therapeutic Camp Services
Division 3, Primitive Camping Excursions
January 2007

Medium-Low
(a) If your therapeutic camp program only allows children to stay at the camp for less than 90 days, then children must remain at the permanent camp at least two days between primitive camping excursions and activities.

Medium-Low
(b) If your therapeutic camp program allows children to stay at the camp for 90 days or more, then children must remain at the permanent camp at least 21 days between primitive camping excursions and activities.
§748.4465. What child/caregiver ratios apply to a primitive camping excursion?

Subchapter U, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Therapeutic Camp Services
Division 3, Primitive Camping Excursions
January 2007

High (a) In addition to meeting the child/caregiver ratio requirements in Subchapter G of this chapter (relating to Child/Caregiver Ratios), you must have at least two caregivers during any primitive camping excursion.

Medium-High (b) In a mixed gender group, there must be a caregiver of each gender at all times.

§748.4467. What are the requirements for toilet facilities for a primitive camping excursion?

Subchapter U, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Therapeutic Camp Services
Division 3, Primitive Camping Excursions
January 2007

(a) You may use pit privies and portable toilets in remote camping areas. You must ensure that the pit privies and portable toilets are:

Medium-Low (1) Maintained in good repair and kept clean at all times;

Medium-Low (2) Constructed and maintained according to manufacturer designs and standards set forth by the Department of State Health Services, General Sanitation Division;

Medium-Low (3) Maintained to prevent access by flies and animals to the contents contained within, to prevent fly breeding, and to prevent contamination of any water supply;

Low (4) Equipped with toilet paper at all times; and

Medium-Low (5) Serviced for the disposal of human excreta that meet regulations set forth by the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality.

(b) If the camp site is not provided with pit privies or other portable toilets, you must:

Medium-Low (1) Comply with the requirements of §748.3861 of this title (relating to What are the requirements for toilet facilities during overnight camping excursions?); and

Medium-Low (2) Have a readily available supply of clean earth backfill or other disposal methods that meet regulations set forth by the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality for the disposal of human excreta in these areas.
§748.4469. What are the requirements for sanitizing hands at a primitive campsite?
Subchapter U, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Therapeutic Camp Services
Division 3, Primitive Camping Excursions
January 2007

(a) Children and employees must sanitize their hands.

(b) At least one of the following methods for sanitizing hands must be available at the campsite:

(1) Bathrooms equipped with running water must always have soap available for use within 20 feet of the toilet areas;

(2) A hand-washing sink using a portable water supply must have a sanitary catch system approved by your local health department and must always have antibacterial liquid soap or an alcohol-based hand sanitizer available for use:

(A) You must follow label directions when using alcohol-based hand sanitizers; and

(B) Children must not have access to soiled water; or

(3) Privies and portable toilet facilities not equipped with running water must always have at least a waterless alcohol-based hand sanitizer available for use adjacent to toilet facilities. You must follow label directions when using alcohol-based hand sanitizers.

§748.4471. What personal hygiene provisions must I provide to a child who participates in a wilderness camping excursion?
Subchapter U, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Therapeutic Camp Services
Division 3, Primitive Camping Excursions
January 2007

You must provide:

(1) Personal hygiene supplies that are biodegradable;

(2) Means for a child to bathe or clean his body at least twice weekly; and

(3) Females with body or hand sanitizing wipes or similar products for feminine hygiene purposes.

§748.4473. What are the requirements for laundry provisions on a wilderness camping excursion?
Subchapter U, Additional Requirements for Operations That Provide Therapeutic Camp Services
Division 3, Primitive Camping Excursions
January 2007

You must provide the children:

(1) Who are on a camping excursion a way to launder clothes at least weekly; or

(2) With clean clothes at least weekly.
Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services

Division 1, Definitions and Scope

§748.4501. What does "trafficking victim services" mean when used in this subchapter?

In this subchapter, trafficking victim services means a specialized type of child-care services designed to treat and support trafficking victims, in addition to basic child care services.

§748.4503. When am I required to meet the additional rules of this subchapter?

You must meet the additional rules of this subchapter if you provide trafficking victim services to:

(1) 25 or more children; or
(2) More than 30% of the children in your care.

§748.4505. In addition to the rules in this subchapter, what other rules in this chapter apply to an operation?

An operation that is required to comply with this subchapter must comply with all other rules in this chapter that apply to all operations, as well as the rules that apply to an operation that provides treatment services to children with an emotional disorder, unless any such rule is replaced by a rule in this subchapter, as noted in §748.4507 of this title (relating to What rules in this subchapter replace other rules in this chapter?).
§748.4507. What rules in this subchapter replace other rules in this chapter?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services
Division 1, Definitions and Scope
December 2014

An operation that is required to comply with the rules in this subchapter is not required to comply with other rules in this chapter if the rule has been replaced, as specified in the following chart:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>An operation must comply with this rule:</th>
<th>Instead of this rule:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Treatment Director Qualifications</td>
<td>§748.4601 of this title (relating to What qualifications must a treatment director have?)</td>
<td>§748.605 of this title (relating to What qualifications must a treatment director have?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-service Experience Requirements for a Caregiver</td>
<td>§748.4651 of this title (relating to What are the pre-service experience requirements for a caregiver?)</td>
<td>§748.861 of this title (relating to What are the pre-service experience requirements for a caregiver?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-service Hourly Training Requirements for Caregivers and Employees</td>
<td>§748.4653 of this title (relating to What are the pre-service hourly training requirements for caregivers and employees?)</td>
<td>§748.863 of this title (relating to What are the pre-service hourly training requirements for caregivers and employees?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual Training Requirements for Caregivers and Employees</td>
<td>§748.4657 of this title (relating to What are the annual training requirements for caregivers and employees?)</td>
<td>§748.931 of this title (relating to What are the annual training requirements for caregivers and employees?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child/Caregiver Ratio During Children's Waking Hours</td>
<td>§748.4701 of this title (relating to For purposes of the child/caregiver ratio, how many children can a single caregiver care for during the children's waking hours?)</td>
<td>§748.1003 of this title (relating to For purposes of the child/caregiver ratio, how many children can a single caregiver care for during the children's waking hours?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child/Caregiver Ratio During Children's Sleeping Hours</td>
<td>§748.4703 of this title (relating to For purposes of the child/caregiver ratio, how many children can a single caregiver care for when children are asleep at night?)</td>
<td>§748.1007 of this title (relating to For purposes of the child/caregiver ratio, how many children can a single caregiver care for when children are asleep at night?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admission of Young Adults</td>
<td>§748.4765 of this title (relating to May I admit a young adult into care?)</td>
<td>§748.1933 of this title (relating to May I admit a young adult into care?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

Division 2, Policies and Procedures

§748.4551. What additional child-care policies must I develop?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services

Division 2, Policies and Procedures

December 2014

You must develop written policies that address how your operation will:

Medium-Low (1) Provide a variety of engaging activities to help trafficking victims develop their skills and independence and gain a sense of personal identity; and

Medium (2) Prevent and discourage trafficking victims from running away from your operation.

§748.4553. What safety and security policies must I develop?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services

Division 2, Policies and Procedures

December 2014

You must develop written policies that address:

Medium (1) The measures you will implement to ensure the safety and security of trafficking victims and employees, including measures that address both interior and exterior security while promoting a comfortable and nurturing environment;

Medium (2) Employee protocols and procedures for ensuring a safe environment, including:

Medium (A) An internal and external communication system that addresses emergency situations; and

Medium (B) How to handle visitors not allowed on the premises of the operation; and

Medium (3) Appropriate safeguards with respect to a trafficking victim's access to forms of communication, including telephones, cell phones, computer, internet, mail, and visitors, which may pose a risk of further victimization of the child.

§748.4555. What confidentiality policies must I develop?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services

Division 2, Policies and Procedures

December 2014

You must develop written policies that address confidentiality, including policies that:

Medium (1) Restrict the disclosure of information, both written and oral, that would identify a child as a trafficking victim, or describe the nature of the victim's trafficking history, other than as needed to serve the victim or comply with other laws;

Medium (2) Specify to whom and under what circumstances an employee or volunteer may disclose the location of the operation; and

Medium (3) Specify the circumstances under which a visitor may or may not be allowed on the premises of the operation.
Division 3, Personnel

§748.4601. What qualifications must a treatment director have?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services
Division 3, Personnel
December 2014

A treatment director that provides or oversees treatment services for trafficking victims must:

(1) Be a psychiatrist or psychologist;

(2) Have a master’s degree in a human services field from an accredited college or university and three years of experience providing treatment services for trafficking victims or children with an emotional disorder, including one year in a residential setting; or

(3) Be a licensed master social worker, a licensed clinical social worker, a licensed professional counselor, or a licensed marriage and family therapist, and have three years of experience providing treatment services for trafficking victims or children with an emotional disorder, including one year in a residential setting.

§748.4603. Are there additional training requirements for volunteers who have contact with children receiving trafficking victim services?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services
Division 3, Personnel
December 2014

Each volunteer whose responsibilities include working with trafficking victims must have one hour of training prior to working with the children. The training must include the following components that explain:

(1) The operation's confidentiality policies; and

(2) How the effects of trauma impact working with trafficking victims.

Division 4, Training

§748.4651. What are the pre-service experience requirements for a caregiver?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services
Division 4, Training
December 2014

(a) Before you may assign a caregiver to be the only caregiver responsible for a child in care, the caregiver must have a minimum of 40 hours of supervised child-care experience in:

(1) Your operation;

(2) Another general residential operation, in which treatment services for children with an emotional disorder or trafficking victim services are provided to 25 or more children or 30% or more of the operation's children; or

(continued)
(3) A child-placing agency, in which treatment services for children with an emotional disorder or trafficking victim services are provided to 30 or more children or 50% or more of the agency’s children;

(b) Until a caregiver has the minimum amount of supervised child-care experience as specified in subsection (a) of this section, the caregiver must be supervised at all times by another caregiver who has already satisfied the minimum caregiver qualifications described in subsection (a) of this section.

(c) The supervised child-care experience must be documented in the appropriate personnel record.

§748.4653. What are the pre-service hourly training requirements for caregivers and employees?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services
Division 4, Training
December 2014

(a) Caregivers and certain employees must complete the following training hours before the noted time frame:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Who is required to receive the training?</th>
<th>What type of pre-service training is required?</th>
<th>How many hours of training are required?</th>
<th>When the training must be completed by?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(1) All caregivers</td>
<td>General pre-service training</td>
<td>8 hours</td>
<td>Before the person can be the only caregiver responsible for a child in care.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium-High</td>
<td>(2) All caregivers</td>
<td>Pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention</td>
<td>16 hours; however, if your operation prohibits the use of emergency behavior intervention, then only 8 hours of training are needed</td>
<td>At least half of the required hours of training before the person can be the only caregiver responsible for a child in care, and all of the required hours of training within 90 days of being responsible for a child in care.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium-High</td>
<td>(3) All caregivers</td>
<td>Pre-service training regarding complex trauma experienced by trafficking victims</td>
<td>5 hours</td>
<td>At least two of the required hours of training before the person can be the only caregiver responsible for a child in care, and all of the required hours of training within 90 days of being responsible for a child in care.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Who is required to receive the training?</th>
<th>What type of pre-service training is required?</th>
<th>How many hours of training are required?</th>
<th>When the training must be completed by?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(4) Child-care administrators, treatment directors, professional level service providers, and case managers</td>
<td>Pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention</td>
<td>8 hours</td>
<td>All 8 hours of training within 90 days of beginning job duties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>(5) Child-care administrators, treatment directors, professional level service providers, and case managers</td>
<td>Pre-service training regarding complex trauma experienced by trafficking victims</td>
<td>5 hours</td>
<td>All 5 hours of training within 90 days of beginning job duties.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Medium-Low (b) You must document the completion of each training requirement in the appropriate personnel record.

§748.4655. Must I provide pre-service training to a caregiver or employee who has previously worked in another operation?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services
Division 4, Training
December 2014

(a) An operation does not have to provide additional general pre-service training or pre-service training regarding emergency behavior intervention to any caregiver or employee who is exempt from this training by §748.867 of this title (relating to Must I provide pre-service training to a caregiver or an employee who has previously worked in an operation?). In addition, a caregiver or employee (child-care administrator, treatment director, professional level service provider, or case manager) does not have to complete the five hours of pre-service training regarding complex trauma experienced by trafficking victims if the caregiver or employee:

(1) During the last 12 months:

   (A) Worked in a general residential operation that provides trafficking victim services to 25 or more children, or 30% or more of the operation’s children in care; or

   (B) Was a caregiver or employee for a child-placing agency that provides trafficking victim services to 30 or more children, or 50% or more of the child-placing agency’s children in care; and

(2) Has documentation that the caregiver or employee has previously received the five hours of pre-service training.

(b) You must document the exemption factors in the appropriate personnel record.
§748.4657. What are the annual training requirements for caregivers and employees?

Caregivers and certain employees must complete the following training hours:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>is required to receive the annual training?</th>
<th>How many hours of annual training and what types of annual training are needed?</th>
<th>Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) All caregivers</td>
<td>50 hours. Of the 50 hours:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(A) Four hours must be completed every six months on training specific to the emergency behavior intervention techniques that you allow, and this training must be completed within 180 days from the date that the caregiver last received such training;</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(B) Four hours must be on training specific to trafficking victims, as further described in §748.4659 of this title (relating to What areas or topics must the four hours of annual training regarding trafficking victims include?); and</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(C) Two hours must be on training specific to transportation safety if the caregiver transports a child in care whose chronological or developmental age is younger than nine years old.</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Child-care administrators, professional level service providers, treatment directors, and case managers who hold a relevant professional license</td>
<td>(A) 15 hours.</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(B) Of the 15 hours, two hours must be on training specific to transportation safety if the person transports a child in care whose chronological or developmental age is younger than nine years old.</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(C) There are no annual training requirements for emergency behavior intervention. However, if there is a substantial change in techniques, types of intervention, or operation policies regarding emergency behavior intervention, then the staff must be re-trained in emergency behavior intervention.</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(D) Annual training hours competed to maintain a person’s relevant professional license may be used to satisfy all or part of the 15 hours of annual training required by this section.</td>
<td>(no weight)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Child-care administrators, professional level service providers, treatment directors, and case managers who do not hold a relevant professional license</td>
<td>(A) 20 hours.</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(B) Of the 20 hours, two hours must be on training specific to transportation safety if the person transports a child in care whose chronological or developmental age is younger than nine years old.</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(C) There are no annual training requirements for emergency behavior intervention. However, if there is a substantial change in techniques, types of intervention, or operation policies regarding emergency behavior intervention, then the staff must be re-trained in emergency behavior intervention.</td>
<td>(no weight)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§748.4659. What areas or topics must the four hours of training regarding trafficking victims include?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services
Division 4, Training
December 2014

The four hours of annual training must include:

1. One hour of training in preventing compassion fatigue and secondary traumatic stress; and
2. Three hours of training in areas appropriate to the needs of children for whom the operation or caregiver will be providing care, which may include:
   A. Typology of trafficking victims;
   B. Manifestations of trauma and practice in trauma informed care;
   C. How trafficking victims are manipulated and controlled;
   D. Making informed decisions and setting boundaries for trafficking victims;
   E. Understanding and avoiding the triggers of trafficking victims;
   F. Creating and maintaining nurturing environments for trafficking victims; and
   G. Identifying and responding to internal safety and security risks (e.g. high flight risk, potential self-harm, harm to others, and internal recruitment).

Division 5, Child/Caregiver Ratios

§748.4701. For purposes of the child/caregiver ratio, how many children can a single caregiver care for during the children's waking hours?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services
Division 5, Child/Caregiver Ratios
December 2014

(a) A single caregiver may care for a maximum of four children during waking hours.
(b) A child does not count in the child/caregiver ratio while the child is away from the operation participating in an approved unsupervised activity, as outlined in §748.685(d) of this title (relating to What responsibilities does a caregiver have when supervising a child or children?).

§748.4703. For purposes of the child/caregiver ratio, how many children can a single caregiver care for when children are asleep at night?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services
Division 5, Child/Caregiver Ratios
December 2014

(a) A single caregiver may care for a maximum of eight children during night-time sleeping hours.
(b) Caregivers must remain awake during night-time sleeping hours.
§748.4751. Are there additional medical requirements when I admit a child for trafficking victim services?

In addition to meeting the requirements under §748.1223 of this title (relating to What are the medical requirements when I admit a child into care?):

Medium (1) You must ensure that a child receiving trafficking victim services is screened within 72 hours of admission to determine whether there is an immediate need for any of the following types of medical services:

Medium (A) A medical examination by a health-care professional; and

Medium (B) Medical tests for pregnancy and the following infectious diseases:

   Medium (i) Hepatitis B;

   Medium (ii) Hepatitis C;

   Medium (iii) HIV;

   Medium (iv) Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs); and

   Medium (v) Tuberculosis.

(no weight) (2) Each individual screening is not required if:

   Medium (A) The child was previously placed in a residential child-care operation regulated by DFPS or a facility operated by the Texas Juvenile Justice Department;

   Medium (B) There was a previous screening completed within the last 12 months;

   Medium (C) You have documentation of the outcome of the screening;

   Medium (D) The child did not run away from the operation or get discharged from the program since the previous screening; and

   Medium (E) There is no clear indication that the child has been injured, victimized, or re-victimized since the previous screening.

Medium-High (3) If the results of the required screening indicate that there is an immediate need for a medical examination or medical tests, you must obtain the medical examination and/or medical tests within five days.
§748.4753. Must a child I admit for trafficking victim services have an alcohol and substance abuse screening?

Yes, you must ensure that a child receiving trafficking victim services is screened for alcohol and substance abuse within 72 hours of admission. The screening is not required if:

(1) You have documentation of:
   (A) A child’s alcohol and substance abuse screening that was conducted within the previous 12 months during the child’s placement at a residential child-care operation regulated by DFPS or a facility operated by the Texas Juvenile Justice Department; or
   (B) A professional assessment that was conducted within the previous 12 months that determined whether alcohol and substance abuse services were needed for the child; and

(2) There is no clear indication that the child has developed an alcohol or substance abuse dependency since the date of the previous screening or assessment.

§748.4755. What must I do if an alcohol and substance abuse screening determines that a child receiving trafficking victim services may need alcohol or substance abuse treatment?

If an alcohol and substance abuse screening determines a child receiving trafficking victim services may need alcohol or substance abuse treatment, you must:

(1) Within 14 days, coordinate and schedule the child for an alcohol and substance abuse professional assessment;

(2) Ensure the professional recommendations are carried out; and

(3) File documentation of the professional assessment, recommendations, and follow-up in the child’s record.
§748.4757. What behavioral health assessments are required when I admit a child for trafficking victim services?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services
Division 6, Admission and Service Planning
December 2014

(a) Within 30 days of admission, you must ensure that a child receiving trafficking victim services is assessed for the following:

(1) Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD);
(2) Depression; and
(3) Anxiety.

(b) The results of all assessments must be documented in the child's record.

(c) Each individual behavioral health assessment is not required if:

(1) The child was previously placed at a residential child-care operation regulated by DFPS or a facility operated by the Texas Juvenile Justice Department;
(2) There was a previous assessment completed within the last 12 months;
(3) You have documentation of the outcome of the child's assessment; and
(4) There is no clear indication that the child has developed one of these disorders since the previous assessment.

§748.4759. What mental health services are required for a child receiving trafficking victim services?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services
Division 6, Admission and Service Planning
December 2014

(a) A professional service provider must:

(1) Provide individual therapy to each child receiving trafficking victim services; and
(2) Assess the frequency and duration of the therapy.

(b) You must document the assessment in the child's record.

(c) If a child refuses therapy, you must document this refusal in the child's record.

(d) For purposes of this rule, a professional service provider means:

(1) A psychiatrist licensed by the Texas State Board of Medical Examiners;
(2) A psychologist licensed by the Texas State Board of Examiners of Psychologists;
(3) A master's level social worker or higher licensed by the Texas State Board of Social Work Examiners;
(4) A professional counselor licensed by the Texas State Board of Examiners and Professional Counselors;

(continued)
(5) A marriage and family therapist licensed by the Texas State Board of Examiners of Marriage and Family Therapists; or

(6) A master's level or higher nurse licensed as an Advanced Practice Registered Nurse by the Texas Board of Nursing and board certified in Psychiatric/Mental Health.

§748.4761. Are there additional requirements for a preliminary service plan when I admit a child for trafficking victim services?

In addition to the requirements listed in §748.1331 of this title (relating to What are the requirements for a preliminary service plan?), the preliminary service plan for a child receiving trafficking victim services must include a description of the child's immediate:

Medium
(1) Safety needs; and

Medium
(2) Behavioral health and treatment care needs.

§748.4763. What additional items must be included in a child's initial service plan?

(a) In addition to the requirements and items noted in §748.1337 of this title (relating to What must a child's initial service plan include?), the initial service plan for a child receiving trafficking victim services must include:

Medium
(1) The plans to obtain alcohol treatment, substance abuse treatment, or both, for children who require it; and

Medium
(2) A description of any legal services required for the child and how you will assist the child in meeting those needs.

Medium-Low
(b) You must document all professional consultations, examinations, recommendations, and treatment in the child's record.
§748.4765. May I admit a young adult into care?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services
Division 6, Admission and Service Planning
December 2014

(a) You may admit a young adult into your transitional living program.

Low

(b) For other programs and services for trafficking victims, you may admit a young adult into your care if the young adult is determined to be a trafficking victim as stated in §748.61(2)(E) of this title (relating to What types of services does Licensing regulate?) and:

1. Is placed at your operation directly after being discharged from another residential child-care operation regulated by DFPS or a facility operated by the Texas Juvenile Justice Department; or
2. Is placed at your operation within 12 months after being discharged from another residential child-care operation regulated by DFPS or a facility operated by the Texas Juvenile Justice Department.

Low

(c) A young adult may remain in your care until the young adult's 23rd birthday.

§748.4767. May a young adult in care share a bedroom with a child in care receiving trafficking victim services?

Subchapter V, Additional Requirements for Operations that Provide Trafficking Victim Services
Division 6, Admission and Service Planning
December 2014

(a) In addition to the requirements listed in §748.1937 of this title (relating to May an adult in care share a bedroom with a child in care?), a professional level service provider for operations must complete a re-assessment anytime a child or young adult:

Medium-Low

1. Runs away from the operation and returns to care; or
2. Is discharged from your program and returns to care.

Medium-Low

(b) The re-assessment and approval by the professional level service provider must be documented and dated in the child's record.
Appendix A: (Background Check Rules Moved)

Appendix A: Background Check Rules has been removed from this publication. These rules are now posted on the DFPS website as a separate publication:

DFPS Licensing Background Check Rules
Texas Administrative Code, Title 40. Social Services and Assistance
Part 19, Texas Department of Family and Protective Services
Chapter 745, Licensing
Subchapter F, Background Checks
Appendix B: Definitions of Abuse, Neglect, Exploitation

Texas Family Code
Title 5, The Parent-Child Relationship and the Suit Affecting the Parent-Child Relationship
Subtitle E, Protection of the Child
Chapter 261, Investigation of Report of Child Abuse or Neglect
Subchapter E, Investigations of Abuse, Neglect, or Exploitation in Certain Facilities

Sec. 261.401. AGENCY INVESTIGATION.

(a) Notwithstanding Section 261.001, in this section:

(1) “Abuse” means an intentional, knowing, or reckless act or omission by an employee, volunteer, or other individual working under the auspices of a facility or program that causes or may cause emotional harm or physical injury to, or the death of, a child served by the facility or program as further described by rule or policy.

(2) “Exploitation” means the illegal or improper use of a child or of the resources of a child for monetary or personal benefit, profit, or gain by an employee, volunteer, or other individual working under the auspices of a facility or program as further described by rule or policy.

(3) “Neglect” means a negligent act or omission by an employee, volunteer, or other individual working under the auspices of a facility or program, including failure to comply with an individual treatment plan, plan of care, or individualized service plan, that causes or may cause substantial emotional harm or physical injury to, or the death of, a child served by the facility or program as further described by rule or policy.

(b) Except as provided by Section 261.404, a state agency that operates, licenses, certifies, registers, or lists a facility in which children are located or provides oversight of a program that serves children shall make a prompt, thorough investigation of a report that a child has been or may be abused, neglected, or exploited in the facility or program. The primary purpose of the investigation shall be the protection of the child.

(c) A state agency shall adopt rules relating to the investigation and resolution of reports received as provided by this subchapter. The Health and Human Services Commission shall review and approve the rules of agencies other than the Texas Department of Criminal Justice, Texas Youth Commission, or Texas Juvenile Probation Commission to ensure that those agencies implement appropriate standards for the conduct of investigations and that uniformity exists among agencies in the investigation and resolution of reports.

(d) The Texas School for the Blind and Visually Impaired and the Texas School for the Deaf shall adopt policies relating to the investigation and resolution of reports received as provided by this subchapter. The Health and Human Services Commission shall review and approve the policies to ensure that the Texas School for the Blind and Visually Impaired and the Texas School for the Deaf adopt those policies in a manner consistent with the minimum standards adopted by the Health and Human Services Commission under Section 261.407.
Appendix C, Vaccine-Preventable Diseases

This guide is intended to provide you with more information to assist in the development and implementation of a vaccine-preventable disease policy for your program.

What must the policy for protecting children from vaccine-preventable diseases include?

Your operation is responsible for developing a policy that includes all areas addressed in §748.241.

How will Licensing evaluate for compliance?

Licensing will review your program’s policy to ensure that it covers each of the eight required areas. Licensing staff will ensure that your operation outlines how you will maintain either written or electronic records for each employee’s compliance with your policy as well as any exemptions. We will not evaluate based on the content of each policy item.

What would be an example of how licensing will evaluate my operation’s compliance with the new rule?

The new rule requires you to specify any vaccines that you have determined an employee must have based on the level of risk the employee presents. Licensing staff will review your policy to ensure you have specified any vaccines an employee must have. For example, if your policy outlines that all employees must only obtain a flu vaccine once every 12 months then we would only review compliance with the employee’s requirement to obtain a flu vaccine.

What immunizations are recommended for adults?

The Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) develops the recommendations and they are listed on the CDC website at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/downloads/adult/adult-schedule.pdf

Do I have to require employees to obtain all immunizations recommended by the CDC?

No, employees at your program will only need to obtain immunizations that are required in your policy. It is up to you to determine what immunizations will be required and which employees are required to obtain them based on their level of risk as determined by their routine and direct exposure with children.
How do I determine an employee’s level of risk?
An employee’s level of risk is determined by the policy you develop. The basis for determining an employee’s level of risk must be outlined in your policy and must be based on the employee’s routine and direct exposure to children. Items to consider when you develop policy include:

- What are the employee’s primary duties?
- How closely does the employee work with children? (For example, does the employee change diapers, assist with toileting, prepare or serve food)
- How often does the employee work with children? (Regular contact vs. substitute basis)
- What are the ages of children the employee works with?

Can an employee be exempt from immunizations that my program’s policy requires?
Yes, an employee may be exempt from one or more of your program’s required immunizations for:

- Medical conditions identified as contraindications or precautions by the CDC; or
- Reasons of conscience, including a religious belief.

What procedures must an employee follow to be exempt from having a required vaccine?
Your policy must address exemption procedures an employee must follow in order for you to determine the employee’s qualification of an exemption.

What are some examples of acceptable documentation for exemptions?
- For medical conditions, acceptable documentation may include a note from the employee’s health care professional providing a statement that the required vaccine is medically contraindicated or poses a significant risk to the health and well-being of the individual.
- For reasons of conscience, acceptable documentation may include a signed and dated statement from the employee that states the employee is exempt for reasons of conscience, including the person’s religious beliefs.
What are some examples of procedures that an exempt employee must follow to protect children in care from exposure to disease?

It is up to your operation to determine what and when protective procedures will be required.

Examples of protective procedures include:

• Wearing gloves when handling or cleaning body fluids, such as after wiping noses, mouths, or bottoms, and tending sores;
• Specifying that an employee with open wounds and/or any injury that inhibits hand washing, such as casts, bandages, or braces, must not prepare food or have close contact with children in care;
• Wearing masks when the employee has respiratory symptoms to reduce the spread of droplets to surrounding areas;
• Wearing masks when taking care of children with respiratory symptoms;
• Removing gloves and washing hands immediately after each task to prevent cross-contamination to other children;
• Excluding the employee from direct care when the employee has signs of illness.

How can I determine that an employee has complied with my operation’s policy?

You must specify in your policy how you will verify that an employee has complied with your policy. This must include what written and/or electronic documentation you will accept. Examples of documentation may include:

• Copy of the employee’s current immunization record;
• Receipt that includes date a required immunization was received;
• Letter signed by a health care professional that lists the date an immunization was received;
• Documentation of exemption for medical reasons from a health care professional;
• Signed and dated statement from the employee for exemption based on a reason of conscience.

Where can my employees get the recommended immunizations?

Individuals should start with their health care provider. Other resources in your area include pharmacies, the health department, and public or community health clinics. For a list of local health departments in Texas visit the Texas Department of State Health Services (DSHS) website at: http://www.dshs.state.tx.us/regions/lhds.shtm

Are there any other resources available for employees to receive the recommended immunizations?

Yes, the Adult Safety Net program created by The Texas Department of State Health Services (DSHS) to increase access to vaccination services in Texas for uninsured adults.
What is the Adult Safety Net program?
The Adult Safety Net (ASN) program provides vaccine purchased with public funds to participating clinics to be used for immunizing uninsured adults.

How do I find an Adult Safety Net provider in my area?
Visit the ASN website at www.dshs.state.tx.us/ASN and click on the search page to locate an ASN clinic near you. (Please check with the clinic before visiting to make sure they can see you.)

Who is eligible to receive vaccinations from the ASN program?
Adults ages 19 years and older that do not have health insurance are eligible to receive ASN vaccines.

Who is not eligible to receive ASN vaccines?
Individuals who do not qualify for ASN vaccines include:
• Adults who have Medicare, Medicaid, or any other insurance, including private insurance.
• Adults who are underinsured for adult vaccines (e.g., those who have healthcare insurance that does not cover adult vaccines).
• Individuals younger than 19 years of age.

What vaccines are offered through the ASN program?
The following is a list of vaccines currently offered through the ASN program and a description of the diseases they prevent.
• Hepatitis B Vaccine — prevents infection of the liver by the hepatitis B virus, which can lead to liver cancer, cirrhosis of the liver, liver failure, and death.
• Hepatitis A Vaccine — prevents infection of the liver by the hepatitis A virus. Symptoms of hepatitis A include lack of energy, diarrhea, fever, nausea and jaundice (yellow color to the whites of the eyes or skin).
• Hepatitis A and Hepatitis B Combination Vaccine—see above.
• Human Papillomavirus (HPV) Vaccine — prevents infection from several strains of HPV, including those that cause genital warts and several types of cancer, such as cervical, anal, penile, and throat cancer.
• Measles/Mumps/Rubella (MMR) Vaccine — prevents infection from the measles virus, which can lead to rash, ear infection, brain damage, and death. Prevents infection from the mumps virus, which can cause fever, swollen glands, headache, and can lead to deafness and meningitis. Prevents infection from rubella virus, which can cause rash, arthritis, and miscarriage in pregnant women.

(continued)
• Pneumococcal Polysaccharide (PPSV23) Vaccine — prevents infection by the Streptococcus pneumoniae bacterium, which is one of the most common causes of severe pneumonia and can lead to other types of infections, such as ear infections, sinus infections, meningitis (infection of the lining of the brain and spinal cord), and blood stream infections (bacteremia).

• Tetanus, Diphtheria, and Pertussis (Tdap) Vaccine — prevents tetanus, which can cause muscle spasms, lockjaw, paralysis, and death. Prevents diphtheria, which can cause suffocation and heart failure. Prevents pertussis (known as “whooping cough”), which can cause severe coughing that can lead to rib fractures, pneumonia, and death. The CDC recommends* one dose for all pregnant women during every pregnancy and all other adults who have not yet received Tdap vaccination, especially those who come in contact with infants.

• Tetanus and Diphtheria (Td) Vaccine — similar to Tdap vaccine (see above), but protects against tetanus and diphtheria only, without the pertussis component.

If I qualify for ASN vaccine, do I have to pay anything?

ASN vaccines are supplied to participating medical providers at no cost. This means that ASN providers cannot charge a fee for the vaccine itself. However, providers are allowed to charge an administration fee of up to $25 for each vaccine that is administered. Although ASN providers may charge this administration fee, they cannot deny the vaccine because of an inability to pay it.
Index

absence of child-care administrator: person in charge – 748.539
accredited college or university: definition – 748.43(1)
active child record: definition – 748.391
activity space: definition – 748.43(2)
activity space: indoor square footage – 748.3351
activity space, outdoors
  maintenance – 748.3475
  safety requirements – 748.3471, 748.3473, 748.3477
adaptive functioning: definition – 748.43(3)
administrator – see child-care administrator
admission
  by law enforcement or juvenile probation – 748.1265
dental requirements – 748.1225
documentation – 748.1205, 748.1221(c)
emergency – 748.1261, 748.1263, 748.1269, 748.1271
medical requirements – 748.1223
  of young adults – 748.1933
  orientation of child – 748.1103, 748.1209
  orientation of parent – 748.1103, 748.1211
  placement agreement – 748.1207
  re-admission – 748.1227
admission assessment
  requirements, general – 748.1217, 748.4231
  requirements, treatment services – 748.1219
time frames – 748.1215, 748.1269
adolescent parents: caring for children of – 748.1825
adult: definition – 748.43(4)
age range of children served: notifying Licensing of changes – 748.231(f)
all terrain vehicles: use by children – 748.3705, 748.3719
animals at the operation – 748.3017
annual training
  administrative staff requirements – 748.931, 748.943
caregiver requirements – 748.931, 748.943
documentation – 748.949
emergency behavior intervention – 748.931, 748.937
annual training employee deadlines – 748.935
psychotropic medication – 748.945
self-instructional – 748.937(d)
types of hours or instruction allowed – 748.937
assessment report
  definition – 748.4391
  requirements – 748.4395, 748.4397
  time frames – 748.4393
assessment services program
  admission – 748.4331, 748.4363
  assessment report – 748.4391 to 748.4397
  definition – 748.61(3)(C)
    individual plan for the assessment – 748.4361, 748.4365, 748.4369, 748.4371
    person responsible for administration – 748.533(b)
audio monitoring – 748.1743, 748.1791, 748.3355, 748.3399
audit – 748.163
baby bungee jumper: definition – 748.1741(1)
baby walker: definition – 748.1741(2)
background checks
  employee qualifications – 748.505
  personnel policies – 748.105(5)
  personnel records – 748.363(9)
barrier: swimming pool safety – 748.3603
basements: use as bedrooms – 748.3359
bathrooms – 748.3391 to 748.3395
bedrooms
  adults in care – 748.1937, 748.1939
  beds and bedding – 748.3365 to 748.3369
  children of caregivers – 748.109
  general requirements – 748.3351, 748.3357, 748.3359
  monitoring 748.3353 to 748.3355
  sharing with adult – 748.3361
  sharing with child of other gender – 748.3363
  to bathroom – 748.3391
  ventilation – 748.3303
behavior intervention – see emergency behavior intervention
belaying – 748.4431
board of directors – see governing body
body fluids – 748.43(50), 748.3007, 748.3015
bottles – 748.1695
bouncer seat: definition – 748.1741(3)
bunk beds – 748.3365, 748.3369
cycling
  child safety – 748.3843
  food and water – 748.3853 to 748.3857, 748.3843(5)
  itinerary – 748.3845, 748.3847
  equipment: shelter, bedding – 748.3849, 748.3851
  requirements – 748.3841
  toilet facilities – 748.3861
capacity – 745.21(3)
carbon monoxide detectors – 748.3191 to 748.3195
caregiver
  annual training clock-hour requirements – 748.931
  background check – 748.505
  definition – 748.43(5)
  education: received outside U.S. – 748.503
  experience requirement – 748.861
  orientation – 748.831, 748.833
  pre-service training – 748.863, 748.865, 748.881 to 748.885, 748.901, 748.903
  pre-service training: exempted from – 748.867
  qualifications – 748.505, 748.681
  ratios – 748.1003 to 748.1007, 748.4465
  responsibilities – 748.507, 748.685
  swimming/water activities – 748.3757, 748.3763, 748.3803
  transitional living – 748.1019, 748.1021
certified lifeguard: definition – 748.43(6)
CEU: definition – 748.801(1)
changes: notifying Licensing of changes in operation – 748.103(7), 748.231(f)
changing diapers – 748.1745, 748.1747
chemical restraint
  definition – 748.2401
  prohibition – 748.1119, 748.2451(b)
child abuse hotline – 748.309, 748.363(8), 748.507, 748.721
child-care administrator
  administering two operations – 748.533
  notifying Licensing of changes – 748.307
  person responsible in the absence of – 748.537, 748.539
  qualifications – 748.531
  required license – 748.531
  responsibilities – 748.535
  training – 748.831, 748.863, 748.931
child/caregiver ratio
  definition – 748.43(7)
  determination – 748.1005, 748.1009, 748.1011 to 748.1015
  field trips – 748.1017
  nighttime care – 748.1007
  primitive camping – 748.4465
  swimming activities – 748.3757
  waking hours – 748.1003
  watercraft activities – 748.3803(b)
child-care services: definition – 748.61
child in care: definition – 748.43(8)
child passenger safety seat
  definition – 748.43(9)
  required use – 748.4041
children
  admission information requirements – 748.1205, 748.1207, 748.1215
  caregiver ratio – see child/caregiver ratio
  dental care – 748.1225, 748.1501
  discharge requirements – see discharge/transfer
  discipline – 748.2301 to 748.2311
  education – 748.1301 to 748.1305
  medical care – 748.1223, 748.1531
  of caregivers – 748.109, 748.1015, 748.1583
  orientation – 748.1103, 748.1209
  physical space requirements – 748.109, 748.3351, 748.3357 to 748.3363, 748.3391 to 748.3397
  service planning requirements – 748.1331 to 748.1387
  supervision – 748.685, 748.1003 to 748.1017, 748.3757, 748.3803
  to whom they may be released – 748.1481
children of adolescent parents: caring for – 748.1825
children’s records
  active records – 748.391, 748.393
  archived records – 748.401
  closed records – 748.401, 748.433
  record retention – 748.433
  release of – 748.397
  required records – 748.393, 748.395, 748.1205, 748.1437, 748.1439
child rights
  contact with others – 748.1111
  contact with parents – 748.1107
  contact with siblings – 748.1109
  education – 748.1301 to 748.1305
  general – 748.1101
  informing child and parents – 748.1103
  personal care – 748.1105
  searches – 748.1113, 748.1115, 748.1117
child’s belongings
  rights to belongings – 748.1101
  storage – 748.3351(3)
climbing equipment – 748.3471, 748.3479
clock hours, training
  annual training requirements – 748.931
  definition of “hours” – 748.801
  emergency behavior intervention training – 748.863, 748.931
  pre-service training – 748.863
communicable diseases
  general requirements – 748.1581, 748.1583, 748.3441(h)
  reporting – 748.303
  training – 748.881, 748.943
continuing education units: definition – 748.801
contract service provider
  communicable disease – 748.1581, 748.1583
  health-care professional prescribing psychotropic medication – 748.2253, 748.2255, 748.2261
  policies – 748.105, 748.107
  requirements – 748.509, 748.723
  service planning team – 748.1343
cottage home
  annual training -- 748.931(a)(3)
  definition -- 748.43(10)
  exemptions -- 748.1703, 748.2151(c), 748.3441, 748.3443(c)
  kitchen/dining -- 748.3445
  ratios -- 748.1003(c), 748.1007(e)
counseling: definition – 748.43(11)
CPR
  definition – 748.801(2)
  training requirements – 748.981 to 748.989
crib
  covering infant’s head or crib – 748.1765
documentation – 748.1751
general requirement – 748.1749(1)
remaining after awakening – 748.1761
safety requirements – 748.1751, 748.1753
criminal background check – see background checks
daily food needs
  general – 748.1691 to 748.1699
  special diets or preferences – 748.1701, 748.1705 to 748.1709
day care, providing – 748.111
days: definition – 748.43(12)
dee-escalation: definition – 748.43(13)
definitions
  accredited college or university – 748.43(1)
  active child record – 748.391
  activity space – 748.43(2)
  adaptive functioning – 748.43(3)
  adult – 748.43(4)
  assessment services program – 748.61(3)(C)
  baby bungee jumper – 748.1741(1)
  baby walker – 748.1741(2)
  bouncer seat – 748.1741(3)
  capacity – 745.21(3)
  caregiver – 748.43(5)
  certified lifeguard – 748.43(6)
  CEU – 748.801(1)
  chemical restraint – 748.2401(1)
  child/caregiver ratio – 748.43(7), 748.1001
  child-care services – 748.61(1)
  child in care – 748.43(8)
  child passenger safety seat system – 748.43(9)
  cottage home – 748.43(10)
  counseling – 748.43(11)
  CPR – 748.801(2)
  definitions days – 748.43(12)
de-escalation – 748.43(13)
Department – 748.43(14)
discipline – 748.43(15)
definitions, continued

disinfecting solution – 748.43(16)
emergency behavior intervention – 748.43(17)
emergency care services – 748.61(3)(A)
emergency medication – 748.2401(4)
emergency situation – 748.2401(5)
family members – 748.43(18)
field trip – 748.43(19)
food service – 748.43(20)
full-time – 748.43(21)
garbage – 748.43(22)
general residential operation – 748.43(23)
group of children – 748.43(24)
health-care professional – 748.43(25)
high-risk behavior -- 748.43(26)
higher risk recreational activity – 748.3705
hours – 748.801(3)
human services field – 748.43(27)
immediate danger – 748.43(28)
independent living program – 748.69
infant – 748.43(29)
instructor led training – 748.801(4)
livestock – 748.43(30)
living quarters – 748.43(31)
mechanical restraint – 748.2401(6)
non-ambulatory – 748.43(32)
non-mobile – 748.43(33)
operation – 748.43(34)
parent – 748.43(35)
permit – 745.21(32)
permit holder – 745.21(33)
definitions person legally authorized to give consent – 748.43(36)
personal restraint – 748.2401(7)
physical force – 748.43(37)
PRN – 748.43(38)
prone restraint – 748.2401(9)
protective device – 748.1611
regularly – 748.43(39)
residential treatment center – 748.43(40)
respite child-care services – 748.75
definitions, continued
sanitize – 748.43(41)
school-age child – 748.43(42)
seat belt – 748.43(43)
seclusion – 748.2401(10)
self instructional training – 748.801(5)
serious incident – 748.301
service plan – 748.43(44)
short personal restraint – 748.2401(11)
state or local fire inspector – 748.43(45)
state or local sanitation official – 748.43(46)
substantial bodily harm – 748.43(47)
supine restraint – 748.2401(12)
supportive device – 748.1631
therapeutic camp services – 748.61(3)(D)
toddler – 748.43(48)
trafficking victim services – 748.4501
transitional hold – 748.2401(13)
transitional living program – 748.61(3)(B)
treatment director – 748.43(49)
treatment services – 748.61(2)
treatment services for children with emotional disorders – 748.61(2)(A)
treatment services for children with intellectual disabilities – 748.61(2)(B)
treatment services for children with pervasive developmental disorders – 748.61(2)(C)
treatment services for children with primary medical needs – 748.61(2)(D)
triggered review – 748.2401(14)
universal precautions – 748.43(50)
use zone – 748.3521
vaccine-preventable disease – 748.43(51)
volunteer – 748.43(52)
water activities – 748.43(53)
young adult – 748.43(54)
dental care
admission requirements – 748.1225
on-going requirements – 748.1501, 748.1503
qualifications to perform – 748.1505
Department: definition – 748.43(14)
diaper changing – 748.1745, 748.1747
discharge/transfer
  child notification – 748.1433
  documentation requirements – 748.1437, 748.1439
  emergency – 748.1443
  information sharing requirements – 748.1437, 748.1439
  release of child – 748.1481
  time frames – 748.1433, 748.1439
discipline
  corporal punishment – 748.2303, 748.2305
  definition – 748.43(15)
  general requirements – 748.2301, 748.2309
  policy requirement – 748.235(7)
  prohibited discipline – 748.1101(b)(5), 748.2307, 748.2311
disease, communicable
  precautions/procedures – 748.1581, 748.1583, 748.1945, 748.3441(h)(4)
  reporting requirements – 748.303(a)(10), 748.303(c)(3)
  training – 748.881(4), 748.943(7)
dishwasher: sanitizing – 748.3009
disinfecting solution: definition – 748.43(16)
disposable gloves: body fluids – 748.3015, 748.3273(10)
documentation
  of admission – 748.1205 to 748.1209, 748.1227, 748.1271, 748.4201
  of admission assessment – 748.1215 to 748.1221, 748.1269, 748.4231
  of background check – 748.363(9)
  of discharge – 748.1433, 748.1437, 748.1439
  of emergency behavior interventions – 748.2853, 748.2855
  of employee/caregiver qualifications – 748.363, 748.501, 748.505, 748.531, 748.563, 748.605, 748.681
  of medical/dental care – 748.1223, 748.1225, 748.1501, 748.1531, 748.1543, 748.1545, 748.1551, 748.1583
  of medication administration – 748.2151
  of serious incidents – 748.311, 748.313
  of service plan/service plan reviews – 748.1331, 748.1337, 748.1341, 748.1347, 748.1349, 748.1383, 748.1385, 748.1389
  of training – 748.831, 748.833, 748.861, 748.863, 748.867, 748.949, 748.989
  drills: emergency evacuation and relocation plan – 748.3239
educational requirements, children in care – 748.1301 to 748.1305
educational requirements, employees
  received outside U.S. – 748.503
  required documentation of qualifications – 748.363, 748.501, 748.505, 748.531, 748.563, 748.605, 748.681
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

electronic records – 748.341, 748.361, 748.401, 748.435
emergency admissions – 748.1261 to 748.1271
emergency behavior intervention
  definition – 748.43(17)
  definitions of types – 748.2401
  documentation – 748.2853, 748.2855
  evaluations – 748.1385(9), 748.2951, 748.2953
  follow-up – 748.2851, 748.2853
  orders – 748.2501 to 748.2507, 748.2751 to 748.2755
  policy – 748.237
  reporting – 748.313
  time limits – 748.2553, 748.2801 to 748.2807
  training – 748.863, 748.901, 748.903, 748.931, 748.947
  triggered reviews – 748.2901 to 748.2909
emergency care services
  administrator – 748.533(b)
  admission – 748.1205, 748.4201, 748.4203, 748.4231
  definition – 748.61(3)(A)
  discharge plan – 748.4213
  living quarters – 748.1201(c)
  placement extension – 748.4209, 748.4211
  time frame – 748.4205, 748.4207
  weapons, firearms, explosives, projectiles – 748.3931
emergency evacuation and relocation plan – 748.191, 748.235(19), 748.3235, 748.3239
emergency exits
  doors – 748.3237
  number required – 748.3233(b)(4)
emergency lighting – 748.3237
emergency medication
  administration – 748.2453, 748.2455, 748.2551
  definition – 748.2401(4)
  documentation – 748.2853, 748.2855
  emergency medication follow-up – 748.2851
  orders – 748.2501 to 748.2507, 748.2753, 748.2755
  simultaneous use – 748.2753, 748.2755
  triggered review – 748.2901 to 748.2909
emergency plans – see emergency evacuation and relocation plan
emergency situation: definition – 748.2401(5)
emotional disorders: treatment services to children with
definition – 748.61(2)(A)
professional level service providers – 748.563(a)
progress notes – 748.685(d)

employee
annual training – 748.931 to 748.949
first aid and CPR training requirements – 748.981 to 748.989
orientation – 748.831, 748.833
pre-service training – 748.861 to 748.869, 748.881 to 748.885, 748.901, 748.903
qualifications – see minimum qualifications
required records – 748.341, 748.361, 748.363, 748.431, 748.435
responsibilities – 748.507, 748.535, 748.561, 748.571, 748.603, 748.685

employee training
documentation – 748.831, 748.833, 748.861, 748.863, 748.867, 748.949, 748.989
orientation – 748.831, 748.833
required hours – 748.861, 748.863, 748.931

equipment, playground
general requirements – 748.3471 to 748.3481
measurement of use zone – 748.3521 to 748.3535
surfacing materials – 748.3561 to 748.3567
equipment: swimming pool – 748.3601, 748.3603

equipment and furnishings
child with a physical disability – 748.1549
dangerous equipment – 748.3021
general – 748.3301, 748.3351
infants – 748.1749, 748.1755, 748.1757
toddler – 748.1793
evacuation plan: required posting – 748.191, 748.3235
exemptions – 748.3351(5), 748.3357(c), 748.3359(3), 748.3391(c), 748.3397(e)
exits, emergency
doors – 748.3237
number required – 748.3233(b)(4)

experience requirement for caregivers: treatment services – 748.861

explosive materials – 748.3705, 748.3931 to 748.3935
exterminator, licensed – 748.3019

extinguisher, fire
building – 748.3113 to 748.3119
pre-service training – 748.881
vehicle – 748.4007(6)

family members: definition – 748.43(18)
feeding infants – 748.1691, 748.1695, 748.3441(j)
feeding toddlers – 748.1691, 748.1697, 748.3441(j)
fence: swimming pool – 748.3601(9), 748.3603(d)
field trip
   child/caregiver ratio – 748.1017
   definition – 748.43(19)
   first aid kit – 748.3271
   required documentation – 748.3845
firearms – 748.3705, 748.3931 to 748.3935
fire drills – 748.3239
fire-extinguishing system/fire extinguisher
   building – 748.3113 to 748.3119
   pre-service training – 748.881
   vehicle – 748.4007
fire inspection
   documentation – 748.3105
   requirements – 748.3101, 748.3103
first-aid kit
   building – 748.3271, 748.3273
   higher risk recreational activity – 748.3713(6)
   vehicle – 748.4007
first-aid training – 748.981 to 748.989
fiscal requirements – 748.161, 748.163
food
   as reward or punishment – 748.2307(14)
   daily needs – 748.1691 to 748.1709, 748.2751, 748.2807(b)
   service and preparation – 748.3441
   snacks – 748.1691, 748.1699, 748.1703, 748.2751(b)(4), 748.2807(b)(4)
   special diets or preferences – 748.1701, 748.1705 to 748.1709
   storage – 748.3441
food service: definition – 748.43(20)
foreign education – 748.503
full-time: definition – 748.43(21)
furnishings and equipment
   child with a physical disability – 748.1549
   dangerous equipment – 748.3021
   general – 748.3301, 748.3351
   infants – 748.1749, 748.1755, 748.1757
   toddler – 748.1793
garbage: definition – 748.43(22)
gas leak: inspection requirements – 748.3061 to 748.3065
GED
  child in care – 748.1931
  employee – 748.681(2)
general residential operation: definition – 748.43(23)
governing body
  notifying Licensing of changes – 748.133
  requirements – 748.101, 748.103(12)
  responsibilities – 748.131
grandfather clauses – 748.3351, 748.3357, 748.3359, 748.3391, 748.3397
group of children: definition – 748.43(24)
hand washing
  children – 748.1795, 748.3395, 748.3861, 748.4469
  employees – 748.1747, 748.3015, 748.3441(h) and (o), 748.3861, 748.4469
health-care professional: definition – 748.43(25)
Health Department - see Texas Department of State Health Services
health inspection – 748.3001 to 748.3005
hearing screening requirements – 748.1545, 748.1547
heating devices – 748.3161
high-risk behavior: definition -- 748.43(26)
  admission documentation -- 748.1205, 748.1271
  service planning -- 748.1337(b)(1)(H)
higher risk recreational activity: definition – 748.3705
high school equivalent – see GED
hiking
  child safety – 748.3843
  food and water – 748.3853 to 748.3857
  “higher risk recreational activity” definition – 748.3705
  itinerary – 748.3845, 748.3847
  overnight – 748.3849, 748.3851, 748.3861
  requirements – 748.3841
hot tub – 748.3607, 748.3765
hours: definition (for training purposes) – 748.801(3)
human services field: definition – 748.43(27)
illness
  ill child – 748.1531, 748.1581, 748.3007, 748.3015
  ill employee – 748.1581
  Licensing reporting requirements – 748.303(a)(2), 748.303(a)(10), 748.303(c)(3)
  Texas Department of State Health Services reporting requirements – 748.303(a)(10),
  748.303(c)(3), 748.1581
immediate danger: definition – 748.43(28)
immunizations
   records – 748.1205, 748.1543
   requirements – 748.1539, 748.1541
incidents, serious
   definition – 748.301
   documentation requirements – 748.311, 748.313
   reporting requirements – 748.303, 748.309
independent living program: definition – 748.69
indoor play equipment – 748.3479
indoor space
   activity space – 748.3351
   bedroom space – 748.3357, 748.3359
infants
   basic care requirements – 748.1743, 748.1759
   changing diapers – 748.1745, 748.1747
   covering head or crib – 748.1765
   definition – 748.43(29)
   feeding – 748.1691, 748.1695, 748.3441(j)
   furnishings and equipment – 748.1749, 748.1755, 748.1757
   naptime – 748.1759(4)
   propping bottles – 748.1695(c)
   remaining in crib after awakening – 748.1761
   sleeping position – 748.1763
   training cups – 748.1695(d)(2)
information required at admission – 748.1205
information required in child records – 748.393, 748.395
information required in personnel records – 748.363
insects
   building and grounds – 748.3019, 748.3301(h)
   food storage – 748.3443
   protective clothing – 748.1101(b)(14)
   repellent when hiking – 748.3843(1)
   sleeping protection – 748.3367(2)
inspection: fire – 748.3101 to 748.3105
inspection: gas leak – 748.3061 to 748.3065
inspection: sanitation – 748.3001 to 748.3005
instructor led training: definition – 748.801(4)
intellectual disabilities: services to children with:
   definition – 748.61(2)(B)
   food – 748.1697
   re-evaluation of intellectual functioning – 748.1389
Juvenile Probation: accepting emergency placements from – 748.1263(6), 748.1265
law enforcement
  required notifications – 748.303
  accepting emergency placements from – 748.1263(6), 748.1265
liability insurance – 748.103(9)
license: required posting – 748.191
licensed exterminator – 748.3019
Licensing Division
  access to child records – 748.399, 748.401, 748.4211
  access to incident reports – 748.315
  access to personnel records – 748.361
  records available for review – 748.163, 748.231, 748.235(19), 748.2951, 748.3565
  required reporting to – 748.133, 748.231, 748.303, 748.307
lifeguard
  count in child/caregiver ratio – 748.3759
  definition of certified lifeguard – 748.43(6)
  requirements – 748.3751 to 748.3755
lights, emergency – 748.3237(b)
livestock: definition – 748.43(30)
living quarters: definition – 748.43(31)
meals
  food preparation – 748.3441
  requirements – 748.1691 to 748.1699
  special requirements – 748.1701, 748.1705 to 748.1709, 748.2751(b)(4), 748.2807(b)(4)
mechanical restraint
  administration – 748.2453, 748.2455, 748.2551, 748.2701 to 748.2705
  definition – 748.2401(6)
  documentation – 748.2853, 748.2855
  follow-up – 748.2851
  orders – 748.2501 to 748.2507, 748.2751(a)(3), 748.2755(a)(3)
  simultaneous or successive use – 748.2751, 748.2755, 748.2757
  time restrictions – 748.2553, 748.2801 to 748.2807
  triggered review – 748.2901 to 748.2909
medical care
  at admission – 748.1223, 748.4203
  documentation – 748.1223, 748.1531(b), 748.4203(2)
  ongoing – 748.1531, 748.1533
  qualifications to perform – 748.1535
medication
administering – 748.2001 to 748.2009
adverse reaction – 748.2231
child right – 748.1101(b)(24)
consent – 748.2001, 748.2003, 748.2253, 748.2255
counting – 748.2151
destruction – 748.2101, 748.2103
documentation – 748.2151
errors – 748.2201 to 748.2205
overnight trips – 748.4007
psychotropic – 748.2001, 748.2253 to 748.2261
self-administering – 748.2051, 748.2053
side effects – 748.2003, 748.2233
storage – 748.2003, 748.2101
mental retardation – see intellectual disabilities: services to children with
menu – 748.1703
minimum qualifications
all employees – 748.505
caregiver – 748.681
child-care administrator – 748.531
professional level service provider – 748.563
treatment director – 748.605
monitoring system, video/audio
bathroom – 748.3399
bedroom – 748.3353, 748.3355
infant, toddler – 748.1743, 748.1791
emergency behavior intervention – 748.2651, 748.2701
multiple locations: child-care administrator – 748.533
nasogastric tube – 748.1709
non-ambulatory: definition – 748.43(32)
non-mobile: definition – 748.43(33)
notification
to law enforcement – 748.303
to Licensing – 748.133, 748.231, 748.303, 748.307, 748.309
to parents – see notifying parents
to Texas Department of State Health Services – 748.1581
notifying parents
    assessment services – 748.4371, 748.4393
    discharge – 748.1433
    incidents – 748.303, 748.307, 748.1581, 748.1699
    medication – 748.2051, 748.2257
    overnight trip – 748.4013
    policies – 748.1103, 748.1211, 748.1305
    respite child-care services – 748.4263
    restrictions – 748.1107, 748.1111, 748.2309
    service plans – 748.1339, 748.1341, 748.1349, 748.1387
number of children for each caregiver – see child/caregiver ratio
operation: definition – 748.43(34)
operational policies – see policies
orientation requirements
    children – 748.237(5), 748.1103, 748.1209
    employees – 748.831, 748.833, 748.865
    parents – 748.1103, 748.1211, 748.1305
outdoor activity space
    general requirements – 748.3471 to 748.3481
    measurement of use zone – 748.3521 to 748.3535
    surfacing materials – 748.3561 to 748.3567
parent: definition – 748.43(35)
parents: consent
    assessment services program: extension on assessment report – 748.4393
    child paying room and board – 748.161(5)
    emergency care services – 748.4201
    higher risk recreational activity – 748.3713(11)
    medication – 748.2001, 748.2253, 748.2255
    overnight trip – 748.4013
    overnight visit with caregiver – 748.105(4)
    parents: consent placement agreement – 748.1207
    publicity, fund raising, research – 748.1211(2)(C)
    release of child’s record – 748.397
    video or audio monitoring – 748.3353, 748.3355
    volunteer or sponsoring family visit – 748.725 to 748.729
parents: notifications – see notifying parents
parents: orientation – 748.1103, 748.1211, 748.1305
permanent camp: definition – 748.4401
permit –745.21(32)
permit: required posting – 748.191
permit holder – 745.21(33)
permit holder responsibilities – 748.101, 748.103, 748.105
personal restraint
  administration – 748.2453, 748.2455, 748.2551, 748.2601 to 748.2605
  definition – 748.2401(7)
  documentation – 748.2853, 748.2855
  follow-up – 748.2851
  orders – 748.2501 to 748.2507, 748.2751(a)(3), 748.2753(a)(3)
  successive or simultaneous use – 748.2751, 748.2753
  time restrictions – 748.2553, 748.2801 to 748.2805
  triggered review – 748.2901 to 748.2909
person legally authorized to give consent: definition – 748.43(36), (see also parents: consent)
personnel policies – 748.105
personnel qualifications
  all employees – 748.505
  caregiver – 748.681
  child-care administrator – 748.531
  professional level service provider – 748.563
  treatment director – 748.605
personnel records
  information required – 748.363
  Licensing access to – 748.361
  record retention – 748.431
pervasive developmental disorder: treatment services to children with
  definition – 748.61(2)(C)
physical force: definition – 748.43(37)
physical space requirements
  activity space – 748.3351
  bedroom space – 748.3357, 748.3359
pick-up trucks: riding in back – 748.4043
placement agreement – 748.1205, 748.1207
playground
  general requirements – 748.3471 to 748.3481
  inspection – 748.3475
  maintenance – 748.3475
  surfacing – 748.3561 to 748.3567
  use zones – 748.3521 to 748.3535
poisons: protecting children – 748.3421
policies
    admission – 748.233
    child-care – 748.235
    conflict of interest – 748.107
    discipline and guidance – 748.235
    electronic records – 748.341
    emergency behavior intervention – 748.235, 748.237
    governing body approval – 748.131, 748.231
    notifying children – 748.1209
    notifying employees – 748.231, 748.363, 748.831
    notifying Licensing of policy changes – 748.231, 748.1203
    notifying parents – 748.1103, 748.1211, 748.1305
    personnel – 748.105
    release of a child – 748.1481
    responsibilities of the governing body - 748.101(4)
    tobacco – 748.1661
    vaccine-preventable disease – 748.241
    volunteer – 748.239

pools, swimming
    safety barrier – 748.3603
    safety equipment – 748.3601
    supervision – 748.3751 to 748.3765

postings required – 748.191

pregnant child
    emergency behavior intervention – 748.1823
    general requirements – 748.1821
    policy requirement – 748.235(16)
    therapeutic camp service, not eligible – 748.4403

pre-service training
    caregivers – 748.863, 748.881
    caregivers for children under two years – 748.883
    caregivers who administer psychotropic medications – 748.885
    emergency behavior intervention – 748.901, 748.903
primary medical needs child: treatment services to children with
   definition – 748.61(2)(D)
   food – 748.1697, 748.1705
   health-care professional requirements – 748.569 to 748.573
   medical exam, admission – 748.1223(b)
   physician review – 748.1551
   policy – 748.235(17)
   professional level service provider – 748.563(a)
   tube feeding – 748.1705 to 748.1709

primitive camp
   child/caregiver ratio – 748.4465
   definition – 748.4401
   hygiene – 748.4469, 748.4471, 748.4473
   time restrictions – 748.4461, 748.4463
   toilet facilities – 748.4467

PRN: definition – 748.43(38)

professional level service provider
   caseload – 748.567
   qualifications – 748.563
   responsibilities – 748.561, 748.565, 748.1201
   roles in service planning – 748.1331, 748.1333, 748.1339, 748.1343, 748.1345, 748.1347

professional staffing plan – 748.501

programmatic services: types – 748.61(3)

prohibited punishment – 748.1101(b)(5), 748.2303 to 748.2307, 748.2311

prohibited techniques – 748.1119

prone restraint
   as transitional hold – 748.2553, 748.2801
   definition – 748.2401(9)
   documentation – 748.2855(c)
   monitoring – 748.2601
   prohibitions – 748.2461, 748.2605
   training requirement – 748.901

propping bottles – 748.1695

protective devices
   definition – 748.1611
   orders – 748.1615, 748.1617
   use of – 748.1615
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

protective surfacing, playground
  deadline for compliance – 748.3567
  documentation – 748.3565
  installation – 748.3561
  requirements – 748.3563

psychotropic medications
  caregiver training – 748.885, 748.945
  consent for – 748.2001, 748.2253, 748.2255
  documentation – 748.2259
  emergency administration – 748.2257
  evaluation – 748.2261
  service planning – 748.1337(b)(1)(A)(viii), 748.1345(1)(D), 748.1385(5)

purpose of Chapter 748 – 748.1
qualifications – see minimum qualifications

records
  access by Licensing – 748.103(3), 748.399, 748.401
  child – 748.391, 748.393, 748.395, 748.401, 748.433
  electronic – 748.341
  medication – 748.2151
  personnel – 748.361, 748.363, 748.431
  protection of – 748.435
  record retention – 748.431, 748.433
  release of child records – 748.397
  serious incidents – 748.311 to 748.315

records, children’s
  access to children’s records – 748.399, 748.401
  general requirements – 748.393
  record retention – 748.401, 748.433
  release of child records – 748.397
  time frames for keeping current – 748.395

records, personnel
  record retention – 748.361, 748.431
  required records – 748.363
recreational activities
  child rights – 748.1101(b)(11)
  higher risk: definition – 748.3705
  higher risk: requirements – 748.3709
  higher risk: supervisor – 748.3711, 748.3713
  hiking and camping – 748.3841 to 748.3861
  requirements – 748.3701, 748.3703
  responsibility to provide – 748.3701
  swimming – 748.3751 to 748.3767
  trampoline – 748.3891, 748.3893
  watercraft activities – 748.3801 to 748.3807
  weapons, firearms, explosives, projectiles – 748.3931 to 748.3935
registered nurse
  as health-care professional – 748.43(25)
  delegation of responsibilities – 748.575
  immunization documentation – 748.1543
  requirements for – 748.569, 748.573
  responsibilities – 748.571
  service planning team – 748.1339
  treatment director qualifications – 748.605
  tube feeding – 748.1707, 748.1709
regularly: definition – 748.43(39)
releasing children – 748.1481 (see also discharge/transfer)
residential treatment center: definition – 748.43(40)
respite child-care services
  admission – 748.4231, 748.4265, 748.4269
  definition – 748.61(3)(E), 748.73
  operation capacity – 748.109
  parent notification – 748.4263
  requirements – 748.75, 748.4261, 748.4263
  time frames – 748.4267
responsibilities of caregivers – 748.685
responsibilities of child-care administrator – 748.535
responsibilities of governing body – 748.131
responsibilities of permit holder – 748.101, 748.103, 748.161
responsibilities of professional level service provider – 748.561, 748.565
responsibilities of treatment director – 748.603
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

safety equipment
  carbon monoxide detectors – 748.3191 to 748.3195
  fire-extinguishing system/fire extinguisher – 748.3113 to 748.3119, 748.4007
  smoke-detection system – 748.3107 to 748.3111
  swimming pool – 748.3601

safety requirements
  cribs – 748.1751, 748.1753
  dangerous tools – 748.3021
  first-aid kit – 748.3271, 748.3273, 748.3713, 748.4007
  general requirements – 748.3237
  heating devices – 748.3161
  infant equipment – 748.1755, 748.1757
  playground equipment – 748.3471 to 748.3481
  poisons/flammables – 748.3421
  pools – 748.3601 to 748.3607
  transportation – 748.4003, 748.4007 to 748.4011, 748.4041 to 748.4047

sanitation: changing diapers – 748.1745, 748.1747
sanitation inspection – 748.3001 to 748.3005
sanitize
  communicable disease – 748.1581(b)(4)
  crib – 748.1751
  definition – 748.43(41)
  food service – 748.3441, 748.3855
  general requirements – 748.3007, 748.3009
  high chair – 748.1695
  wading/splashing pool – 748.3605

school, child in care – 748.1301 to 748.1305
school-age child: definition – 748.43(42)
screening for hearing and vision – 748.1545, 748.1547
screening for tuberculosis – 748.1583
searches – 748.113 to 748.1117
seat belt
  definition – 748.43(43)
  requirements – 748.4041, 748.4045, 748.4047
seclusion
  administration – 748.2453, 748.2455, 748.2551, 748.2651, 748.2653
  definition – 748.2401(10)
  documentation – 748.2853, 748.2855
  seclusion follow-up – 748.2851
  orders – 748.2501 to 748.2507, 748.2751(a)(3), 748.2753(a)(3)
  restrictions on use of – 748.2451
  seclusion room requirements – 748.2651, 748.2653
  successive or simultaneous use – 748.2751, 748.2753, 748.2757
  time restrictions – 748.2553, 748.2801 to 748.2807
  triggered review – 748.2901 to 748.2909
self instructional training: definition – 748.801(5)
self-medication – 748.2051, 748.2053
septic system – 748.3317, 748.3393
serious incident
  definition – 748.301
  documentation – 748.311 to 748.315
  reporting – 748.303, 748.309
service plan: definition – 748.43(44)
service plan: initial
  copy/summary – 748.1349
  documentation – 748.1337, 748.1347
  involvement – 748.1339, 748.1343
  notification – 748.1341
  required content – 748.1337
  time frames – 748.1335, 748.1351
service plan: preliminary – 748.1331, 748.1333
service plan: review
  documentation – 748.1385, 748.1387
  notification, involvement – 748.1387
  required content – 748.1385
  time frames – 748.1381, 748.1383
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

short personal restraint
  administration – 748.2451, 748.2455 to 748.2461
  definition – 748.2401(11)
  no data – 748.2953
  no documentation – 748.2855(f)
  no follow-up – 748.2851(f)
  no orders – 748.2501
  no triggered review – 748.2901
  serious incident reporting – 748.313(2)
  time restrictions – 748.2553, 748.2801, 748.2805
sinks
  food service – 748.3013
  hand-washing – 748.3395, 748.4469
slides – see playground
smoke-detection system – 748.3107 to 748.3111
smoking – 748.1661
snacks – 748.1691, 748.1699, 748.1703, 748.2751, 748.2807
special diets or preferences – 748.1701, 748.1705 to 748.1709
sponsor family – 748.727, 748.729
square footage
  bedroom space – 748.3357(b)(2)
  living space – 748.3351
  seclusion room – 748.2651(b)(1)
staffing plan – see professional staffing plan
state or local fire inspector: definition – 748.43(45)
state or local sanitation official: definition – 748.43(46)
storage
  child’s belongings – 748.3351(3)
  dangerous tools – 748.3021
  food – 748.3441, 748.3443
  medications – 748.2101
  weapons, firearms, explosives, projectiles – 748.3931
Structural Pest Control Board – 748.3019
substantial bodily harm
  definition – 748.43(47)
  emergency situation – 748.2401(5)
  serious incident reporting – 748.303(a)(4)
supervision of children
field trips – 748.1017
general requirements – 748.685, 748.1009 to 748.1015
infants – 748.1743
ratios – 748.1003 to 748.1007, 748.4465
swimming activities – 748.3751 to 748.3765
toddlers – 748.1791
transitional living – 748.1019 to 748.1023
use of audio/video equipment – 748.1743, 748.1791, 748.2651, 748.2701, 748.3353, 748.3355, 748.3399
supine restraint
as transitional hold – 748.2553, 748.2801
definition – 748.2401(12)
documentation – 748.2855(b)
monitoring – 748.2601
prohibitions – 748.2461, 748.2605
training requirement – 748.901
supportive devices
definition – 748.1631
orders – 748.1633, 748.1635
use of – 748.1633
surfacing material requirements: playground equipment – 748.3561 to 748.3567
swimming activities
“higher risk recreational activity” definition – 748.3705
hot tub requirements – 748.3607
lifeguard requirements – 748.3751 to 748.3755
stock tanks – 748.3767
supervision – 748.3757 to 748.3765
swimming pool requirements – 748.3601 to 748.3605
swimming pools
general requirements – 748.3601 to 748.3605
notifying Licensing of changes – 748.307(2)
swings – see playground
TB screening requirement – 748.1583
telephone: required at the operation – 748.3309
testing for tuberculosis – 748.1583
Texas Department of State Health Services
  camping toilet facilities – 748.4467
  communicable disease – 748.1581
  immunization requirements – 748.1539, 748.1541
  sanitation inspection – 748.3001
  sanitizing – 748.3009
  swimming pools – 748.3603
  tuberculosis screening requirement – 748.1583
  universal precautions – 748.3015
Texas Health and Safety Code: vision and hearing screening requirements – 748.1545, 748.1547
therapeutic camp services
  activities that require spotting/belaying – 748.4431
  animals – 748.3017, 748.3019
  definition – 748.61(3)(D)
  eligible children – 748.4403
  no emergency admission – 748.1261
  no seclusion – 748.2451(a)(4)(A)
time allowed for compliance with new rules
  governing body membership (two years) – 748.131(5)
  playgrounds (five years) – 748.3481, 748.3535, 748.3567
  swimming pool (five years) – 748.3603(1)
tobacco products – 748.1661
toddlers
  definition – 748.43(48)
  feeding – 748.1691, 748.1697, 748.3441(j)
  furnishings and equipment – 748.1793
  general requirements – 748.1791, 748.1795
toilets
  general requirements – 748.3393
  overnight camping – 748.3861
  primitive camping – 748.4467
training
  annual requirements – 748.931 to 748.937, 748.943
  CEU definition – 748.801(1)
documentation – 748.831, 748.833, 748.861, 748.863, 748.867, 748.949, 748.989
emergency behavior intervention: annual – 748.931, 748.947
emergency behavior intervention: pre-service – 748.863, 748.901, 748.903
first-aid and CPR requirements – 748.981 to 748.989
infant and toddler care: pre-service – 748.883
instructor criteria – 748.869, 748.941
instructor-led training definition – 748.801(4)
pre-service: caregivers – 748.863, 748.865, 748.881
pre-service: caregivers exempted – 748.867
psychotropic medication: annual – 748.945
psychotropic medication: pre-service – 748.885
resources: no Licensing approval – 748.939
self-instructional training definition – 748.801(5)
trafficking victim services
  alcohol and substance abuse screening – 748.4753, 748.4755
  child-care policies – 748.4551
  child/caregiver ratios – 748.4701, 748.4703
  confidentiality policies – 748.4555
  definition – 748.4501
  experience requirements – 748.4651
  medical requirements – 748.4751
  mental/behavioral health – 748.4757, 748.4759
  replacement rules – 748.4507
  safety and security policies – 748.4553
  service plan – 748.4761, 748.4763
  training
    annual – 748.4657, 748.4659
    pre-service – 748.4653, 748.4655
treatment director qualifications – 748.4601
volunteers – 748.4603
young adult – 748.4765, 748.4767
trampoline
  general requirements – 748.3891, 748.3893
  “higher risk recreational activity” definition – 748.3705
Minimum Standards for General Residential Operations

transfer of child in care
  definition – 748.1431
  documentation – 748.1437
  emergency – 748.1443
  immediate danger – 748.1435
  planning – 748.1433
  service planning – 748.1383

transitional hold
  definition – 748.2401(13)
  requirements – 748.2553, 748.2801

transitional living program
  caregiver supervision – 748.1019, 748.1021
  definition – 748.61(3)(B)
  eligible children – 748.65
  policy – 748.235(9)
  requirements – 748.67, 748.1023, 748.1261

transportation
  all-terrain vehicles – 748.3705, 748.3719
  booster seats – 748.4041
  emergencies – 748.4009
  general requirements – 748.4001 to 748.4005
  loading/unloading children – 748.4011
  maintenance – 748.4083
  out-of-state trips – 748.4013
  overnight trips – 748.4007
  pick-up trucks – 748.4043
  records – 748.4111
  seat belt definition – 748.43(43)
  seat belt requirements – 748.4041, 748.4045, 748.4047
  smoking in vehicles – 748.1661
  weapons, firearms, explosive materials, projectiles – 748.3935

treatment director
  definition – 748.43(49)
  required – 748.601, 748.607
  responsibilities – 748.603
  qualifications – 748.605, 748.607

treatment services: definition – 748.61(2)
treatment services for children with emotional disorders: definition – 748.61(2)(A)
treatment services for children with intellectual disabilities: definition – 748.61(2)(B)
treatment services for children with pervasive developmental disorders: definition – 748.61(2)(C)
treatment services for children with primary medical needs: definition – 748.61(2)(D)
triggered review, emergency behavior intervention
  definition – 748.2401(14)
  requirements – 748.2901 to 748.2909
truck, riding in back – 748.4043
tube-feeding formula – 748.1707, 748.1709
tuberculosis screening requirement – 748.1583
universal precautions: definition – 748.43(50)
updating policies – 748.231
use zone
  definition – 748.3521
  deadline for compliance – 748.3535
  measurement for rotating or rocking equipment – 748.3533
  measurement for slides – 748.3525
  measurement for stationary equipment – 748.3523
  measurement for swings – 748.3527, 748.3529, 748.3531
vehicles – see transportation
video monitoring system – 748.1743, 748.1791, 748.2651, 748.2701, 748.3353, 748.3399
vision screening requirements – 748.1545, 748.1547
volunteers
  as employees – 748.723
  definition – 748.43(51), 748.725, 748.727
  policy requirements – 748.239
  requirements – 748.721, 748.729, 748.731
  serious incident reporting – 748.303(c)
  swimming activities – 748.3763
  tuberculosis screening – 748.509, 748.1583
wading/splashing pools - 748.3605
washing machine – 748.3009
water activities – see swimming activities
watercraft activities
  activity supervisor – 748.3805
  definition – 748.3801
  equipment – 748.3807
  “higher risk recreational activity” definition – 748.3705
  lifeguard – 748.3751
  requirements – 748.3803
water supply: private or public – 748.3313
weapons
  “higher risk recreational activity” definition – 748.3705
  policy requirement – 748.3931(3)
  requirements/restrictions – 748.3931 to 748.3935
young adult
  admission – 748.1933
  child/caregiver ratio – 748.1935
  definition – 748.43(53)
  eligibility for care – 748.1931, 748.1933
  self-medication – 748.1941
  space requirements – 748.1937, 748.1939
  tuberculosis screening – 748.1583, 748.1943, 748.1945